

Bicategories of Lax Fractions

Graham Manuell and Lurdes Sousa*

22nd July 2025

Abstract

The well-known calculus of fractions of Gabriel and Zisman provides a convenient way to formally invert morphisms in a category. This was extended to bicategories by Pronk. On the other hand, the second author has developed a calculus of lax fractions for order-enriched categories that formally turns a given class of morphisms into left adjoint right inverses. We extend these constructions by presenting a calculus of lax fractions for 2-categories that formally turns a class of morphisms and pseudo-commutative squares into left adjoint right inverses and Beck–Chevalley squares.

Contents

1	Introduction	1
2	The Σ-calculus	2
3	The bicategory of lax fractions	13
3.1	The categories $\mathcal{X}[\Sigma_*](A, B)$	14
3.2	Σ -schemes and Ω 2-cells	24
3.3	The horizontal composition and the associator	32
4	The universal property	49
A	On Σ-paths and Ω 2-cells	58

1 Introduction

The calculus of fractions construction by Gabriel and Zisman [2] provides a universal way to formally invert a class of morphisms in a category. In [6] Pronk presents a 2-categorical generalisation allowing for freely turning morphisms from a given class into equivalences. On the other hand, in [7] the second author introduces a calculus of lax fractions for order-enriched categories in order to formally add right adjoint retractions to morphisms in a class while also controlling when the Beck–Chevalley condition holds.

In this paper we provide a synthesis of these two approaches by providing a calculus of lax fractions for 2-categories.

One application of our calculus, developed in the paper [4], is a construction of the bicategory of (strict) monoidal categories and lax monoidal functors from the 2-category of strict monoidal categories and strict monoidal functors by formally adding right adjoints to the morphisms whose underlying functors have fully faithful right adjoints.

The data for the construction involves the original 2-category \mathcal{X} and a collection Σ of squares, commuting up to isomorphism, whose horizontal morphisms are to become left adjoint right inverses, and which will themselves will become Beck–Chevalley squares. This collection

*The authors thank the partial support by the Centre for Mathematics of the University of Coimbra - UIDB/00324/2020, funded by the Portuguese Government through FCT/MCTES.

of squares must satisfy a number of axioms (Definition 2.1). In particular, the horizontal morphisms of these squares together with the squares themselves form a subcategory of the arrow category $\mathcal{X}^{\rightarrow \cong}$. The resulting bicategory of lax fractions $\mathcal{X}[\Sigma_*]$ will have the same objects as \mathcal{X} and 1-cells given by cospans $A \xrightarrow{f} I \xleftarrow{s} B$ where s is a horizontal morphism from Σ . The 2-cells are certain equivalence classes of diagrams of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} A & \xrightarrow{f} & I & \xleftarrow{r} & B \\ \parallel & & \downarrow x_1 & \xrightarrow{\Sigma^{\delta_1}} & \parallel \\ & \swarrow \alpha & X & \xleftarrow{x_3} & B \\ & & \uparrow x_2 & \xrightarrow{\Sigma^{\delta_2}} & \parallel \\ A & \xrightarrow{g} & J & \xleftarrow{s} & B \end{array}$$

where Σ denotes that the squares come from the collection Σ . This bicategory is universal in the sense that, for each bicategory \mathcal{Y} , there is an biequivalence between the bicategory of pseudofunctors from $\mathcal{X}[\Sigma_*]$ to \mathcal{Y} and a bicategory whose objects are pseudofunctors from \mathcal{X} to \mathcal{Y} that send the horizontal morphisms of Σ to left adjoint right inverses and the squares of Σ to Beck–Chevalley squares.

In the paper [4] we will present several special examples of bicategories of lax fractions and explore the relationship between the calculus of lax fractions, lax idempotent monads and Kan extensions.

Bourke and Garner [1] addressed to the construction of categories by freely adding a “section” to certain morphisms. Our approach here is completely different but it may be interesting to study how their work relates to our bicategory of fractions.

2 The Σ -calculus

Let \mathcal{X} be a 2-category and denote by $\mathcal{X}^{\rightarrow \cong}$ the arrow category whose objects are the 1-cells of \mathcal{X} and whose morphisms from $f: X \rightarrow Y$ to $g: Z \rightarrow W$ are triples $(u, v, \delta): f \rightarrow g$ where $u: X \rightarrow Z$ and $v: Y \rightarrow W$ are 1-cells and $\delta: gu \rightarrow vf$ is an invertible 2-cell:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \bullet & \xrightarrow{f} & \bullet \\ u \downarrow & \nearrow \delta & \downarrow v \\ \bullet & \xrightarrow{g} & \bullet \end{array} \quad (2.1)$$

The identity morphisms are just identity 2-cells $(1, 1, \text{id}): f \rightarrow f$; composition is vertical composition of squares, that is, for $f \xrightarrow{(u, v, \delta)} g \xrightarrow{(u', v', \delta')} h$, the composition is given by $(u', v', \delta') \cdot (u, v, \delta) = (u'u, v'v, (v' \circ \delta)(\delta' \circ u))$.

Let Σ be a subcategory of $\mathcal{X}^{\rightarrow \cong}$. In the following we will use a square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \bullet & \xrightarrow{r} & \bullet \\ u \downarrow & \Sigma^{\delta} & \downarrow v \\ \bullet & \xrightarrow{s} & \bullet \end{array}$$

with Σ^{δ} in its center, to indicate that $(u, v, \delta): r \rightarrow s$ is a morphism in Σ . If no danger of confusion exists we also use just Σ without δ . We call these squares Σ -**squares**. Sometimes we reverse or invert them, but the horizontal arrows always refer to objects of Σ , and the vertical ones to the 1-cell part of the represented morphism.

In this way, our calculus of lax fractions becomes essentially a calculus of Σ -squares.

Definition 2.1. Left calculus of lax fractions. Given a subcategory Σ of $\mathcal{X}^{\rightarrow \cong}$, we say that it *admits a left calculus of lax fractions* provided that the following conditions are satisfied.

- (1) **Identity.** Every identity 1-cell of \mathcal{X} is an object of Σ , and for every Σ -object $s: X \rightarrow Y$ we have the Σ -square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{1_X} & X \\ 1_X \downarrow & \Sigma^{\text{id}} & \downarrow s \\ X & \xrightarrow{s} & Y \end{array} .$$

- (2) **Repletion.**

- (a) **Vertical Repletion.** For every invertible 2-cell $\delta: r \Rightarrow s$ with $r: X \rightarrow Y$ in Σ , s also belongs to Σ and we have the Σ -square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{s} & Y \\ 1_X \downarrow & \Sigma^\delta & \downarrow 1_Y \\ X & \xrightarrow{r} & Y \end{array} .$$

- (b) **Horizontal Repletion.** For every pair of morphisms $f, g: X \rightarrow Y$ and every invertible 2-cell $\gamma: f \Rightarrow g$, we have the Σ -square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{1_X} & X \\ f \downarrow & \Sigma^\gamma & \downarrow g \\ Y & \xrightarrow{1_Y} & Y \end{array} .$$

- (3) **Composition.** If in the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \bullet & \xrightarrow{r} & \bullet & \xrightarrow{s} & \bullet \\ f \downarrow & \textcircled{1} & \downarrow g & \textcircled{2} & \downarrow h \\ \bullet & \xrightarrow{r'} & \bullet & \xrightarrow{s'} & \bullet \end{array}$$

① and ② are both Σ -squares, then the pasting diagram ①+② is also a Σ -square.

- (4) **Square.** For every span $\bullet \xleftarrow{f} \bullet \xrightarrow{s} \bullet$ with $s \in \Sigma$, there is a Σ -square of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \bullet & \xrightarrow{s} & \bullet \\ f \downarrow & \Sigma & \downarrow f' \\ \bullet & \xrightarrow{s'} & \bullet \end{array} .$$

- (5) **Equi-insertion.** For every Σ -square and every 2-cell $\alpha: f^! r \Rightarrow g$ as in the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{r} & B \\ f \downarrow & \Sigma^\delta & \downarrow f' \\ C & \xrightarrow{s} & D \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c} \nearrow r \\ \nearrow \alpha \\ \nearrow g \end{array}$$

there is a 1-cell $d: D \rightarrow E$ and a 2-cell $\alpha': df^! \Rightarrow dg$ such that

$$\begin{array}{ccc} C & \xrightarrow{s} & D \\ \parallel & \Sigma^{\text{id}} & \downarrow d \\ C & \xrightarrow{ds} & E \end{array}$$

and $d\alpha = \alpha' r$.

(6) **Equification.** For every Σ -square and two 2-cells as in the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{r} & B \\ f \downarrow & \Sigma^\delta f' \left(\begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\alpha} \\ \xrightarrow{\beta} \end{array} \right) g & \\ C & \xrightarrow{s} & D \end{array}$$

with $\alpha r = \beta s$, there is a 1-cell $d: D \rightarrow E$ such that

$$\begin{array}{ccc} C & \xrightarrow{s} & D \\ \parallel & \Sigma^{\text{id}} & \downarrow d \\ C & \xrightarrow{ds} & E \end{array}$$

and $d\alpha = d\beta$.

Remark 2.2. Given a subcategory Σ of the arrow category $\mathcal{X}^{\rightarrow \cong}$, we say that it admits a **right calculus of lax fractions** if it satisfies the rules of Definition 2.1, but with all 1-cells reversed.

Remark 2.3. One can consider this left calculus of lax fractions in the more general context of bicategories. We opt for starting with a 2-category to simplify the exposition, and also because all the examples we know involve 2-categories.

Remark 2.4. The Composition axiom (together with Horizontal Repletion) allows to us to view Σ as a double category.

Remark 2.5. Using Vertical Repletion and Composition, we have the following property:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} B & \xrightarrow{r} & I \\ \parallel & \Sigma^{\text{id}} & \downarrow x \\ B & \xrightarrow{xr} & X \end{array} \text{ if and only if } \begin{array}{ccc} B & \xrightarrow{r} & I \\ \parallel & \Sigma^\delta & \downarrow x \\ B & \xrightarrow{u} & X \end{array} \text{ for some } u \text{ and } \delta.$$

Remark 2.6. 1. A 1-cell $f: A \rightarrow B$ is said to be a **lari** (abbreviation for **left adjoint right inverse**), if there is an adjunction

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & f & \\ A & \xrightarrow{\quad} & B \\ & \perp (\eta, \varepsilon) & \\ & g & \end{array}$$

such that η is an invertible 2-cell. Thus, in this case, the conditions defining the adjunction

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{f} & B \\ \parallel & \eta & \parallel \\ \downarrow & g & \downarrow \\ A & \xrightarrow{f} & B \end{array} = \text{id}_f \quad \text{and} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} B & \xrightarrow{g} & A \\ \parallel & \varepsilon & \parallel \\ \downarrow & f & \downarrow \\ B & \xrightarrow{g} & A \end{array} = \text{id}_g$$

lead to

$$(f \circ \eta)^{-1} = \varepsilon \circ f \quad \text{and} \quad (\eta \circ g)^{-1} = g \circ \varepsilon.$$

In the following, we use the notation f_* to denote a right adjoint to f .

2. A diagram of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \bullet & \xrightarrow{r} & \bullet \\ f \downarrow & \nearrow \delta & \downarrow g \\ \bullet & \xrightarrow{s} & \bullet \end{array}$$

with r and s lari 1-cells and δ an invertible 2-cell has the **Beck–Chevalley condition** if its mate is an isomorphism — that is, in the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \bullet & \xleftarrow{r_*} & \bullet \\ f \downarrow & \searrow \bar{\delta} & \downarrow g \\ \bullet & \xleftarrow{s_*} & \bullet, \end{array}$$

the 2-cell $\bar{\delta} = (s_* \circ g \circ \varepsilon^r) \cdot (s_* \circ \delta \circ r_*) \cdot (\eta^s \circ f \circ r_*) : fr_* \Rightarrow s_*g$ is invertible.

Examples 2.7. 1. **Laris.** For a 2-category \mathcal{X} , let Σ be the subcategory of the category $\mathcal{X}^{\rightarrow \cong}$ given by all laris and those morphisms of $\mathcal{X}^{\rightarrow \cong}$ forming Beck–Chevalley squares.

The subcategory Σ of laris admits a left calculus of lax fractions. Indeed, Identity, Repletion and Composition are clear. For Square, observe that, since s is a lari, the square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{s} & Y \\ f \downarrow & \nearrow f \circ \eta & \downarrow f s_* \\ Z & \xlongequal{\quad} & Z \end{array}$$

satisfies the Beck–Chevalley condition. For Equi-insertion, suppose we have

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & & & B \\ & & & \nearrow r & \\ A & \xrightarrow{r} & B & & \\ f \downarrow & \nearrow \delta & \downarrow f' & \nearrow g & \\ C & \xrightarrow{s} & D & & \end{array}$$

where δ is invertible and satisfying the Beck–Chevalley condition. Let $\bar{\delta}$ be the mate of δ . The Equi-insertion condition is fulfilled by putting $d = s_*$ and defining α' to be the composite $s_* f' \xrightarrow{\bar{\delta}^{-1}} fr_* \xrightarrow{\bar{\alpha}\bar{\delta}} s_*g$ where $\bar{\alpha}\bar{\delta}$ denotes the mate of the composite $\alpha \cdot \delta$. Note that

$$\begin{array}{ccc} C & \xrightarrow{s} & D \\ \parallel & \nearrow \text{id} & \downarrow s_* \\ C & \xrightarrow{s_*s} & E \end{array}$$

is indeed a Beck–Chevalley square. To see that $s_*\alpha = \alpha' r$, it suffices to show $s_*\alpha \cdot \bar{\delta} r \cdot f\eta^r = \alpha' r \cdot \bar{\delta} r \cdot f\eta^r$, since $\bar{\delta}$ and η^r are invertible. But $\alpha' r \cdot \bar{\delta} r \cdot f\eta^r = \bar{\alpha}\bar{\delta} r \cdot f\eta^r$. Thus, we can just show that $s_*\alpha \cdot \bar{\delta} r \cdot f\eta^r = \bar{\alpha}\bar{\delta} r \cdot f\eta^r$. Expanding the definition of the mates we have

$$\begin{aligned} & s_*\alpha \cdot s_*f' \varepsilon^r r \cdot s_*\delta r_* r \cdot \eta^s fr_* r \cdot f\eta^r \\ &= s_*\alpha \cdot s_*f' \varepsilon^r r \cdot s_*\delta r_* r \cdot s_*sf\eta^r \cdot \eta^s f \\ &= s_*\alpha \cdot s_*f' \varepsilon^r r \cdot s_*f' r\eta^r \cdot s_*\delta \cdot \eta^s f \\ &= s_*\alpha \cdot s_*\delta \cdot \eta^s f \end{aligned}$$

on the left-hand side and

$$\begin{aligned}
& s_* g \varepsilon^r r \cdot s_* \alpha r_* r \cdot s_* \delta r_* r \cdot \eta^s f r_* r \cdot f \eta^r \\
&= s_* g \varepsilon^r r \cdot s_* \alpha r_* r \cdot s_* f^l r \eta^r \cdot s_* \delta \cdot \eta^s f \\
&= s_* g \varepsilon^r r \cdot s_* g r \eta^r \cdot s_* \alpha \cdot s_* \delta \cdot \eta^s f \\
&= s_* \alpha \cdot s_* \delta \cdot \eta^s f
\end{aligned}$$

on the right-hand side. Thus, they are indeed equal.

For Equification, we show that again we may take $d = s_*$. Let $\bar{\delta} : fr_* \Rightarrow s_* f^l$ be the mate of δ . Composing α and β with $\varepsilon^r : rr_* \Rightarrow 1_B$ and $\bar{\delta}$,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
& & & g & \\
& & & \nearrow \alpha & \\
& & & f^l & \\
& & & \parallel \bar{\delta} & \\
& & & s_* & \\
B & \xrightarrow{r_*} & A & \xrightarrow{r} & B & \xrightarrow{r_*} & A & \xrightarrow{f} & C
\end{array}$$

as $s_* \circ \alpha \circ r = s_* \circ \beta \circ r$, we have $s_* \circ \alpha \circ \varepsilon^r = s_* \circ \beta \circ \varepsilon^r$, hence we obtain that $(s_* \circ \alpha) \cdot (f \circ r_* \circ \varepsilon^r) \cdot (\bar{\delta} \circ r \circ r_*) = (s_* \circ \beta) \cdot (f \circ r_* \circ \varepsilon^r) \cdot (\bar{\delta} \circ r \circ r_*)$. Since $(f \circ r_* \circ \varepsilon^r) \cdot (\bar{\delta} \circ r \circ r_*)$ is invertible, $s_* \circ \alpha = s_* \circ \beta$.

2. **Ordinary left calculus of fractions.** Given an ordinary category \mathcal{X} and a class Σ of morphisms of \mathcal{X} , let us look at \mathcal{X} as a 2-category with trivial 2-cells (in particular, laris are just isomorphisms) and at Σ as a full subcategory of the arrow category $\mathcal{X}^{\rightarrow}$. Then, for Σ , to admit a left calculus of lax fractions just means to admit a left calculus of fractions in the classical sense ([2]).

3. **Pronk's calculus.** In [6], Dorette Pronk introduced a *right bicalculus of fractions* for a class Σ of 1-cells generalising the classical calculus for bicategories (see also [5]). With this calculus, the localization process yields a bicategory where morphisms in Σ become equivalences. Here we show that in a 2-category \mathcal{X} , a class Σ of 1-cells admits a left bicalculus of fractions, in the sense of Pronk, if and only if Σ , viewed as a full subcategory of $\mathcal{X}^{\rightarrow \cong}$, admits a left calculus of lax fractions.

First, we observe that, if Σ is a full subcategory of $\mathcal{X}^{\rightarrow \cong}$, we can look at Σ as a class of 1-cells of \mathcal{X} , and our *left calculus of lax fractions* becomes one with the following rules:

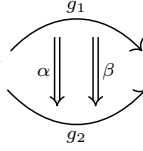
- (Id) All identity 1-cells belong to Σ .
- (Rep) For every invertible 2-cell $\delta : r \Rightarrow s$ with $r \in \Sigma$, also s belongs to Σ .
- (Comp) Σ is closed under composition.
- (Sq) For every span $X \xleftarrow{f} Y \xrightarrow{s} Z$ with $s \in \Sigma$, there are 1-cells $s' : Z \rightarrow W$ and $f' : Y \rightarrow W$, with s' in Σ , and an invertible 2-cell

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\bullet & \xrightarrow{s} & \bullet \\
f \downarrow & \delta \nearrow & \downarrow f' \\
\bullet & \xrightarrow{s'} & \bullet
\end{array}$$

(Eq1) For every 2-cell $X \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{r} Y \\ \xrightarrow{r} Y \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{g_1} Z \\ \xrightarrow{g_2} Z \end{array}$ with $r \in \Sigma$, there is $q : Z \rightarrow W$ in Σ and a

2-cell $\alpha' : qg_1 \Rightarrow qg_2$ such that $\alpha' \circ r = q \circ \alpha$.

(Eq2) For every diagram $X \xrightarrow{r} Y$ with $r \in \Sigma$, there is $q: Z \rightarrow W$ in Σ such that $q \circ \alpha = q \circ \beta$.



For obtaining (Eq1) from Equi-insertion, observe that now $g_1 r \downarrow \begin{smallmatrix} \xrightarrow{r} \\ = \\ \downarrow \end{smallmatrix} \downarrow_{g_1}$ is a Σ -square.

Conversely, from (Eq1) and (Comp) we obtain Equi-insertion. A similar analysis works for (Eq2).

Comparing with the *left bicalculus of fractions* of Pronk, we see that rules (Id), (Rep), (Comp) and (Sq) are common to Pronk's calculus (except that in (Id) we just impose identities to belong to Σ instead of all equivalences). The remaining rule of the left bicalculus of fractions states that:

(PR) Given $X \xrightarrow{r} Y$ in Σ , 1-cells $g_1, g_2: Y \rightarrow Z$ and a 2-cell $\alpha: g_1 \circ r \Rightarrow g_2 \circ r$, we have that:

- (i) There is $q: Z \rightarrow Q$ in Σ and $\alpha': q \circ g_1 \Rightarrow q \circ g_2$ with $\alpha' \circ r = q \circ \alpha$.
- (ii) If we have other q' and α'' as q and α' in (i), that is, $q': Z \rightarrow Q'$ belongs to Σ and $\alpha'': q' \circ g_1 \Rightarrow q' \circ g_2$ with $\alpha'' \circ r = q' \circ \alpha$, then there are 1-cells u and u' and an invertible 2-cell $\varepsilon: u \circ q \Rightarrow u' \circ q'$ such that $(\varepsilon \circ g_2) \cdot (u \circ \alpha') = (u' \circ \alpha'') \cdot (\varepsilon \circ g_1)$.

In [6], there is another part of (PR), namely,

(PR)(iii) If, in (i), α is invertible, then α' may be chosen invertible too.

But this condition is not needed, since it follows from the others, as it was shown in [5].

(PR)(i) is just (Eq1). Thus, in order to show that Pronk's bicalculus is equivalent to our calculus of lax fractions, we only need to prove that, in the presence of the rules (Id), (Rep), (Comp), (Sq) and (Eq1), (PR)(ii) \iff (Eq2).

(PR)(ii) \implies (Eq2). Given 2-cells $\alpha, \beta: g_1 \circ r \Rightarrow g_2 \circ r$ as in (Eq2), both $(1_Z, \alpha)$ and $(1_Z, \beta)$ play the same role as (q, α') in (Eq1). Then, by (PR)(ii), there are $u, u': Z \rightarrow W$ in Σ and an invertible $\varepsilon: u \rightarrow u'$ such that $\varepsilon \circ \alpha = \varepsilon \circ \beta$, thus $u \circ \alpha = u \circ \beta$.

(Eq2) \implies (PR)(ii). Let (q, α') be as in (Eq1) and let another pair (q', α'') play the

same role. Apply (Sq) to q' and q obtaining $q \downarrow \begin{smallmatrix} \xrightarrow{q'} \\ \theta \\ \downarrow \end{smallmatrix} \downarrow_{p'}$. Then,

$$(\theta \circ g_2) \cdot (p \circ \alpha') \circ r = \theta \circ \alpha = (p' \circ \alpha'') \cdot (\theta \circ g_1) \circ r.$$

By (Eq2) there is a 1-cell d belonging to Σ such that $d \circ (\theta \circ g_2) \cdot (p \circ \alpha') = d \circ (p' \circ \alpha'') \cdot (\theta \circ g_1)$. Hence, $u = dp$, $u' = dp'$ and $\varepsilon = d \circ \theta$ fulfill the conditions of (PR)(ii).

4. **Order-enriched categories.** For an order-enriched category \mathcal{X} , that is, a 2-category where all $\mathcal{X}(A, B)$, $A, B \in \mathcal{X}$, are just posets, we can remove the rule Equification because it trivially always holds. This way, our calculus of lax fractions becomes the calculus introduced in [7] by the second author, except that Horizontal Repletion, stating that identity squares of the form $\downarrow \begin{smallmatrix} \xrightarrow{\text{id}} \\ \text{id} \\ \downarrow \end{smallmatrix} \downarrow$ are Σ -squares, was not used there. The following examples in order-enriched categories can be found in [7].

- (a) **Embeddings in Pos.** Let D be the contravariant endofunctor on **Pos** taking each poset X into the poset of lower sets of X , and every monotone map $f: X \rightarrow Y$

to the preimage map $Df: DY \rightarrow DX$. Let Σ consist of all embeddings of **Pos** and commutative squares $\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{m} & Y \\ u \downarrow & & \downarrow v \\ Z & \xrightarrow{n} & W \end{array}$ such that $(Du)^* \cdot Dm = Dn \cdot (Dv)^*$, where

$(-)^*$ stands for the left adjoint. Equivalently, these squares are those such that, for every $y \in Y$ and $z \in Z$, if $n(z) \leq v(y)$ then there is some $x \in X$ with $z \leq u(x)$ and $m(x) \leq y$. Then Σ admits a left calculus of lax fractions.

- (b) **Embeddings in Loc.** Let **Loc** be the category of locales (i.e., frames) and localic maps, i.e., maps preserving all infima and whose left adjoint f^* preserves finite meets. Recall that embeddings in **Loc** are precisely the localic maps h made split monomorphisms by its left adjoint: $h^* h = id$.

Let Σ consist of all embeddings and commutative squares

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{m} & Y \\ u \downarrow & & \downarrow v \\ Z & \xrightarrow{n} & W \end{array}$$

satisfying the Beck–Chevalley condition $v^* n = m u^*$. Then Σ admits a left calculus of lax fractions.

- (c) **Flat embeddings in Loc.** In the following two cases we have a subcategory of $\mathbf{Loc}^{\rightarrow}$ which admits a left calculus of lax fractions:

- All dense embeddings and squares as above.
- All flat embeddings and squares as above.

5. **Lax epimorphisms.** Recall that in a 2-category \mathcal{X} a 1-cell $f: X \rightarrow Y$ is said to be a *lax epimorphism* (or *co-fully faithful*) if, for every object Z , the functor $\mathcal{X}(Y, Z) \xrightarrow{(-) \circ f} \mathcal{X}(X, Z)$ is fully faithful, i.e., every 2-cell $\alpha: g_1 f \Rightarrow g_2 f$ factors uniquely through f . Lax epimorphisms are stable under bi-pushouts, that is, a bi-pushout of a lax epimorphism along any morphism is a lax epimorphism (see [3]).

Let Σ be the full subcategory of $\mathcal{X}^{\rightarrow \cong}$ of all lax epimorphisms. Then, Σ admits a left calculus of lax fractions, that is, it fulfills rules (Id), (Rep), (Comp), (Sq), (Eq1) and (Eq2) of Example 3 above. All rules are obvious, (Sq) is obtained with a bi-pushout.

Analogously, if we take all lax epimorphisms and just all squares obtained by a finite

vertical and horizontal composition of identity squares of the form $\begin{array}{ccc} X & \xrightarrow{1_X} & X \\ 1_X \downarrow & & \downarrow 1_X \\ X & \xrightarrow{1_X} & X \end{array}$ with r a

lax epimorphism and bi-pushout squares, we obtain a left calculus of lax fractions.

6. **Fully faithful functors.** Let **Cat** be the 2-category of small categories. Let Σ consist of all fully faithful functors and squares

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathbb{A} & \xrightarrow{M} & \mathbb{B} \\ F \downarrow & \delta \nearrow & \downarrow G \\ \mathbb{C} & \xrightarrow{N} & \mathbb{D} \end{array}$$

(with M and N fully faithful and δ invertible) such that if (\bar{Y}, κ) is the a Kan extension of the Yoneda embedding $Y: \mathbb{C} \rightarrow [\mathbb{C}^{op}, \mathbf{Set}]$ along N then $(\bar{Y}G, (\bar{Y} \circ \delta) \cdot (\kappa \circ F))$ is a left Kan extension of YF along M .

7. **Strict monoidal functors.** Let $\mathbf{Cat}(\mathbf{Mon})$ be the 2-category of categories internal to the category **Mon** of monoids. A category in **Mon** is the same thing as a strict monoidal category, while an internal functor is a strict monoidal functor. The class of strict monoidal functors whose underlying functors have fully faithful right adjoints and the pseudo-commutative squares whose underlying functors form Beck–Chevalley squares admits a right calculus of lax fractions.

The last two examples, as well as other examples and the corresponding bicategories of fractions, will be studied in detail in the paper [4], where we explore the relation of the calculus of lax fractions with lax-idempotent monads and Kan extensions.

In the next proposition, from the rules (1)–(6) of the left calculus of lax fractions we obtain new rules which will be very useful in what follows.

Proposition 2.8. *Let Σ be a subcategory of $\mathcal{X}^{\rightarrow\cong}$ admitting a left calculus of lax fractions. Then it satisfies the following rules:*

Rule 1. *Every square obtained as a finite (horizontal and vertical) composition of Σ -squares is a Σ -square.*

Rule 2. *For composable $r, s \in \Sigma$, we have*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \bullet & \xrightarrow{r} & \bullet \\ \parallel & \Sigma^{\text{id}} & \downarrow s \\ \bullet & \xrightarrow{sr} & \bullet \end{array}$$

Rule 3. *If $\begin{array}{ccc} \bullet & \xrightarrow{r} & \bullet \\ s \downarrow & \Sigma^\delta & \downarrow u \\ \bullet & \xrightarrow{t} & \bullet \end{array}$ and $s \in \Sigma$ then $\begin{array}{ccc} \bullet & \xrightarrow{r} & \bullet \\ \parallel & \Sigma^\delta & \downarrow u \\ \bullet & \xrightarrow{ts} & \bullet \end{array}$ and $\begin{array}{ccc} \bullet & \xrightarrow{s} & \bullet \\ \parallel & \Sigma^{\text{id}} & \downarrow t \\ \bullet & \xrightarrow{ts} & \bullet \end{array}$.*

Rule 4. *If we have two diagrams of the form*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} B_1 & \xrightarrow{r_1} & I_1 \\ b_1 \downarrow & \Sigma^{\delta_1} & \downarrow x_1 \\ A & \xrightarrow{x_3} & X \\ b_2 \uparrow & \Sigma^{\delta_2} & \uparrow x_2 \\ B_2 & \xrightarrow{r_2} & I_2 \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} B_1 & \xrightarrow{r_1} & I \\ b_1 \downarrow & \Sigma^{\varepsilon_1} & \downarrow y_1 \\ A & \xrightarrow{y_3} & Y \\ b_2 \uparrow & \Sigma^{\varepsilon_2} & \uparrow y_2 \\ B_2 & \xrightarrow{r_2} & I_2 \end{array}$$

then there are $X \xrightarrow{d_x} D \xleftarrow{d_y} Y$ and invertible 2-cells $\gamma_i: d_x x_i \Rightarrow d_y y_i$, $i = 1, 2$, such that we have the following Σ -squares formed with d_x and d_y and the equality of pasting diagrams:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} B_1 & \xrightarrow{r_1} & I_1 \\ b_1 \downarrow & \Sigma^{\delta_1} & \downarrow x_1 \\ A & \xrightarrow{x_3} & X \xrightarrow{\gamma_1} d_y y_1 \\ \parallel & \Sigma^\varphi & \downarrow d_x \\ A & \xrightarrow{u} & D \\ \parallel & \Sigma^\varphi & \uparrow d_x \\ A & \xrightarrow{x_3} & X \xrightarrow{\gamma_2} d_y y_2 \\ b_2 \uparrow & \Sigma^{\delta_2} & \uparrow x_2 \\ B_2 & \xrightarrow{r_2} & I_2 \end{array} = \begin{array}{ccc} B_1 & \xrightarrow{r_1} & I \\ b_1 \downarrow & \Sigma^{\varepsilon_1} & \downarrow y_1 \\ A & \xrightarrow{y_3} & Y \xrightarrow{d_y} \\ \parallel & \Sigma^\chi & \downarrow d_y \\ A & \xrightarrow{u} & D \\ \parallel & \Sigma^\chi & \uparrow d_y \\ A & \xrightarrow{y_3} & D \\ b_2 \uparrow & \Sigma^{\varepsilon_2} & \uparrow y_2 \\ B_2 & \xrightarrow{r_2} & I_2 \end{array}$$

Rule 4'. *If we have Σ -squares as the two ones on the top of the diagrams*

$$\begin{array}{ccc} B & \xrightarrow{r} & I \\ b \downarrow & \Sigma^\delta & \downarrow x \\ A & \xrightarrow{\quad} & X \xrightarrow{\gamma} d_y y \\ \parallel & \Sigma^\varphi & \downarrow d_x \\ A & \xrightarrow{u} & D \end{array} = \begin{array}{ccc} B & \xrightarrow{r} & I \\ b \downarrow & \Sigma^\varepsilon & \downarrow y \\ A & \xrightarrow{\quad} & Y \xrightarrow{d_y} \\ \parallel & \Sigma^\chi & \downarrow d_y \\ A & \xrightarrow{u} & D \end{array}$$

then there are 1-cells $X \xrightarrow{d_x} D \xleftarrow{d_y} Y$ forming Σ -squares as in the bottom of the diagrams and an invertible 2-cell $\gamma : d_x x \Rightarrow d_y y$ forming the above equality of pasting diagrams.

Rule 5. For every two spans $X \xleftarrow{v} B \xrightarrow{f} C$ and $X \xleftarrow{v} B \xrightarrow{g} C$ with $v \in \Sigma$, there are $w : C \rightarrow D$ and Σ -squares of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} B & \xrightarrow{v} & X \\ f \downarrow & \Sigma^\delta & \downarrow f' \\ C & \xrightarrow{w} & D \end{array} \quad \text{and} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} B & \xrightarrow{v} & X \\ g \downarrow & \Sigma^\varepsilon & \downarrow g' \\ C & \xrightarrow{w} & D. \end{array}$$

Rule 6. Given a diagram

$$X \xleftarrow{v} B \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{f} \\ \Downarrow \beta \\ \xrightarrow{g} \end{array} C$$

with $v \in \Sigma$, there are a 1-cell $w : C \rightarrow D$, Σ -diagrams of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} B & \xrightarrow{v} & X \\ f \downarrow & \Sigma^\delta & \downarrow f' \\ C & \xrightarrow{w} & D \end{array} \quad \text{and} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} B & \xrightarrow{v} & X \\ g \downarrow & \Sigma^\varepsilon & \downarrow g' \\ C & \xrightarrow{w} & D \end{array}$$

and a 2-cell $\beta' : f' \Rightarrow g'$ performing the following equality of pasting diagrams:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} B & \xrightarrow{v} & X \\ f \downarrow & \delta \nearrow & f' \downarrow \\ C & \xrightarrow{w} & D \end{array} \xRightarrow{\beta'} g' = f \left(\begin{array}{ccc} B & \xrightarrow{v} & X \\ \Downarrow \beta & \downarrow g & \varepsilon \nearrow \\ C & \xrightarrow{w} & D \end{array} \right) g'.$$

Proof. 1. Horizontal composition of Σ -squares is given by Composition, the vertical one is the composition in the subcategory Σ .

2. It is obtained by using Vertical Repletion, Identity and Composition:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \bullet & \xrightarrow{r} & \bullet \\ \parallel & \Sigma^{\text{id}} & \parallel \\ \bullet & \xrightarrow{r} & \bullet \end{array} \xRightarrow{\text{id}} \begin{array}{ccc} \bullet & \xrightarrow{r} & \bullet \\ \parallel & \Sigma^{\text{id}} & \parallel \\ \bullet & \xrightarrow{s} & \bullet \end{array} \xRightarrow{s} \bullet = \begin{array}{ccc} \bullet & \xrightarrow{r} & \bullet \\ \parallel & \Sigma^{\text{id}} & \parallel \\ \bullet & \xrightarrow{sr} & \bullet \end{array}$$

3. Observe that

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \bullet & \xrightarrow{r} & \bullet \\ \parallel & \Sigma^{\text{id}} & \parallel \\ \bullet & \xrightarrow{s} & \bullet \end{array} \xRightarrow{s} \begin{array}{ccc} \bullet & \xrightarrow{r} & \bullet \\ \parallel & \Sigma^\delta & \parallel \\ \bullet & \xrightarrow{t} & \bullet \end{array} \xRightarrow{u} \bullet = \begin{array}{ccc} \bullet & \xrightarrow{r} & \bullet \\ \parallel & \Sigma^\delta & \parallel \\ \bullet & \xrightarrow{ts} & \bullet \end{array}.$$

The other Σ -square is obtained by Rule 2, since $t \in \Sigma$.

4. A. First, we prove two auxiliary rules, namely 4a and 4b, as follows:

4a. If we have a diagram of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{r} & B \\ f \downarrow & \Sigma & \downarrow \\ C & \xrightarrow{s} & D \end{array} \quad a \left(\begin{array}{ccc} \xrightarrow{\alpha} \\ \Downarrow \beta \\ \xleftarrow{\beta} \end{array} \right) b$$

with $\alpha \circ r = (\beta \circ r)^{-1}$, then there is a 1-cell $d: D \rightarrow E$ such that

$$\begin{array}{ccc} C & \xrightarrow{s} & D \\ \parallel & \Sigma & \downarrow d \\ C & \xrightarrow{ds} & E \end{array}$$

and $d \circ \alpha = (d \circ \beta)^{-1}$.

4b. Given Σ -squares

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{r} & B \\ f \downarrow & \Sigma^\delta & \downarrow a \\ C & \xrightarrow{s} & D \end{array} \quad \text{and} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{r} & B \\ f \downarrow & \Sigma^\varepsilon & \downarrow b \\ C & \xrightarrow{s} & D \end{array}$$

there is a 1-cell $d: D \rightarrow E$ and an invertible 2-cell $\gamma: da \Rightarrow db$ such that

$$\begin{array}{ccc} C & \xrightarrow{s} & D \\ \parallel & \Sigma^{\text{id}} & \downarrow d \\ C & \xrightarrow{ds} & E \end{array}$$

and $(\gamma \circ r) \cdot (d \circ \delta) = d \circ \varepsilon$.

Proof of 4a. Since we have $(\beta \cdot \alpha) \circ r = \text{id}_a \circ r$ and $(\alpha \cdot \beta) \circ r = \text{id}_b \circ r$, by Equification twice we obtain, successively, 1-cells $d_1: D \rightarrow D_1$ and $d_2: D_1 \rightarrow D_2$ such that

$$\begin{array}{ccc} C & \xrightarrow{s} & D \\ \parallel & \Sigma & \downarrow d_1 \\ C & \xrightarrow{d_1 s} & D_1 \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} C & \xrightarrow{d_1 s} & D_1 \\ \parallel & \Sigma & \downarrow d_2 \\ C & \xrightarrow{d_2 d_1 s} & D_2 \end{array}$$

and, also, first $d_1 \circ (\beta \cdot \alpha) = d_1 \circ \text{id}_a$ and, secondly, $d_2 \circ d_1 \circ (\alpha \cdot \beta) = d_2 \circ d_1 \circ \text{id}_b$. Thus, the 1-cell $d = d_2 d_1$ is as desired.

Proof of 4b. We have the 2-cell $ar \xRightarrow{\delta^{-1}} sf \xRightarrow{\varepsilon} br$. Then, using Equi-insertion, there

is $d_1: D \rightarrow D_1$ and $\gamma_1: d_1 a \Rightarrow d_1 b$ such that

$$\begin{array}{ccc} C & \xrightarrow{s} & D \\ \parallel & \Sigma^{\text{id}} & \downarrow d_1 \\ C & \xrightarrow{d_1 s} & D_2 \end{array} \quad \text{and} \quad \gamma_1 \circ r = d_1 \circ (\varepsilon \cdot \delta^{-1}).$$

Analogously, departing from $d_1 br \xRightarrow{d_1 \varepsilon^{-1}} d_1 sf \xRightarrow{d_1 \delta} d_1 ar$, we obtain $d_2: D_1 \rightarrow D_2$ and

a 2-cell $\gamma_2: d_2 d_1 b \Rightarrow d_2 d_1 a$ such that

$$\begin{array}{ccc} C & \xrightarrow{d_1 s} & D \\ \parallel & \Sigma^{\text{id}} & \downarrow d_2 \\ C & \xrightarrow{d_2 d_1 s} & D_2 \end{array} \quad \text{and} \quad \gamma_2 \circ r = d_2 \circ ((d_1 \circ \delta) \cdot (d_1 \circ \varepsilon^{-1})).$$

This way, we have the Σ -square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} C & \xrightarrow{s} & D \\ \parallel & \Sigma^{\text{id}} & \downarrow d_2 d_1 \\ C & \xrightarrow{d_2 d_1 s} & D_2 \end{array}$$

and the 2-cell composition $d_2 d_1 a \xRightarrow{d_2 \gamma_1} d_2 d_1 b \xRightarrow{\gamma_2} d_2 d_1 a$ such that $(\gamma_2 \circ r)^{-1} = d_2 \circ \gamma_1 \circ r$. Using the rule 4a, we conclude that there is $d_3: D_2 \rightarrow D_3$ such that

$$\begin{array}{ccc} C & \xrightarrow{d_2 d_1 s} & D \\ \parallel & \Sigma^{\text{id}} & \downarrow d_3 \\ C & \xrightarrow{d_3 d_2 d_1 s} & D_2 \end{array} \quad \text{and} \quad (d_3 \circ \gamma_2)^{-1} = d_3 d_2 \gamma_1. \quad \text{Hence, the 1-cell } d = d_3 d_2 d_1 \text{ and the}$$

invertible 2-cell $\gamma = d_3 d_2 \gamma_1: da \Rightarrow db$ are as desired.

B. Now, we prove Rule 4.

We obtain successively:

$$(i) \quad \begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{x_3} & X \\ y_3 \downarrow & \Sigma^\varphi & \downarrow a' \\ Y & \xrightarrow{a} & Z \end{array} \quad \text{by Square}$$

$$(ii) \quad \begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{x_3} & X \\ \parallel & \Sigma^\varphi & \downarrow a' \\ A & \xrightarrow{ay_3} & Z \end{array} \quad \text{and} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{y_3} & Y \\ \parallel & \Sigma^{\text{id}} & \downarrow a \\ A & \xrightarrow{ay_3} & Z \end{array} \quad \text{by (i) and Rule 3}$$

$$(iii) \quad \begin{array}{ccc} B_i & \xrightarrow{r_i} & I_i \\ b_i \downarrow & \Sigma^{\delta_i} & \downarrow x_i \\ A & \xrightarrow{x_3} & X \\ \parallel & \Sigma^\varphi & \downarrow a' \\ A & \xrightarrow{ay_3} & Z \end{array} \quad \text{and} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} B_i & \xrightarrow{r_i} & I_i \\ b_i \downarrow & \Sigma^{\varepsilon_i} & \downarrow y_i \\ A & \xrightarrow{y_3} & Y \\ \parallel & \Sigma^{\text{id}} & \downarrow a \\ A & \xrightarrow{ay_3} & Z \end{array}, \quad i = 1, 2$$

using the initial data, (ii) and Rule 1

$$(iv) \quad \begin{array}{ccc} B_1 & \xrightarrow{r_1} & I_1 \\ b_1 \downarrow & \Sigma^{\delta_1} & \downarrow x_1 \\ A & \xrightarrow{x_3} & X \\ \parallel & \Sigma^\varphi & \downarrow a' \\ A & \xrightarrow{ay_3} & Z \\ \parallel & \Sigma^{\text{id}} & \downarrow q \\ A & \xrightarrow{v_1} & Q \end{array} \xrightarrow[\gamma]{qay_1} \begin{array}{ccc} B_1 & \xrightarrow{r_1} & I_1 \\ b_1 \downarrow & \Sigma^{\varepsilon_1} & \downarrow y_1 \\ A & \xrightarrow{y_3} & Y \\ \parallel & \Sigma^{\text{id}} & \downarrow a \\ A & \xrightarrow{ay_3} & Z \\ \parallel & \Sigma^{\text{id}} & \downarrow q \\ A & \xrightarrow{v_1} & Q \end{array} \quad \text{with } \gamma \text{ invertible}$$

by (iii) and rule 4b.

$$(v) \quad \begin{array}{ccc} B_2 & \xrightarrow{r_2} & I_2 \\ b_2 \downarrow & \Sigma & \downarrow qa'x_2 \\ A & \xrightarrow{v_1} & Q \end{array} \quad \text{and} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} B_2 & \xrightarrow{r_2} & I_2 \\ b_2 \downarrow & \Sigma & \downarrow qay_2 \\ A & \xrightarrow{v_1} & Q \end{array}$$

using Rule 1 applied to Σ -squares of (iii) and (iv)

$$(vi) \quad \begin{array}{ccc} B_2 & \xrightarrow{r_2} & I_2 \\ b_2 \downarrow & \Sigma & \downarrow qa'x_2 \\ A & \xrightarrow{v_1} & Q \\ \parallel & \Sigma^{\text{id}} & \downarrow q' \\ A & \xrightarrow{q'v_1} & D \end{array} \xrightarrow[\gamma_2]{q'qay_2} \begin{array}{ccc} B_2 & \xrightarrow{r_2} & I_2 \\ b_2 \downarrow & \Sigma & \downarrow qay_2 \\ A & \xrightarrow{v_1} & Q \\ \parallel & \Sigma^{\text{id}} & \downarrow q' \\ A & \xrightarrow{q'v_1} & D \end{array} \quad \text{with } \gamma_2 \text{ invertible}$$

by (v) and rule 4b.

Thus, setting $d_x = q'qa'$, $d_y = q'qa$ and $\gamma_1 = q'\gamma$, we obtain the desired result.

- 4'. This is immediate from Rule 4. Indeed unfolding symmetrically each one of the Σ -squares, we get a particular case of Rule 4.
5. Use Square to obtain successively

$$\begin{array}{ccc} B \xrightarrow{v} X & B \xrightarrow{v} X & C \xrightarrow{w_1} D_1 \\ f \downarrow \quad \Sigma^\delta \quad \downarrow \tilde{f} & g \downarrow \quad \Sigma^\varepsilon \quad \downarrow \tilde{g} & w_2 \downarrow \quad \Sigma^\varphi \quad \downarrow d_1 \\ C \xrightarrow{w_1} D_1 & C \xrightarrow{w_2} D_2 & D_2 \xrightarrow{d_2} D \end{array}$$

Now, using Rule 3 and Rule 1, we have:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} B \xrightarrow{v} X & & B \xrightarrow{v} X \\ f \downarrow \quad \Sigma^\delta \quad \downarrow \tilde{f} & & g \downarrow \quad \Sigma^\varepsilon \quad \downarrow \tilde{g} \\ C \xrightarrow{w_1} D_1 & \text{and} & C \xrightarrow{w_2} D_2 \\ \parallel \quad \Sigma^\varphi \quad \downarrow d_1 & & \parallel \quad \Sigma^{\text{id}} \quad \downarrow d_2 \\ C \xrightarrow{d_2 w_2} D & & C \xrightarrow{d_2 w_2} D \end{array}$$

6. First, departing from v , f and g , obtain the Σ -squares as in 5. with $\bar{\delta}$, $\bar{\varepsilon}$, \bar{D} , \bar{w} , \bar{f} and \bar{g} instead of δ , ε , D , w , f' and g' , respectively. Then we have a 2-cell $\mu = (\bar{f}v \xRightarrow{\bar{\delta}^{-1}} \bar{w}f \xRightarrow{\bar{w}\beta} \bar{w}g \xRightarrow{\bar{\varepsilon}} \bar{g}v)$. By Equi-insertion we get $d : \bar{D} \rightarrow D$, forming a Σ -square with \bar{w} , and a 2-cell $d\bar{f} \xRightarrow{\mu'} d\bar{g}$ such that $\mu' \circ v = d \circ \mu$. The desired Σ -squares Σ^δ and Σ^ε , the 1-cell w and the 2-cell β' are then given by $\delta = d \circ \bar{\delta}$, $\varepsilon = d \circ \bar{\varepsilon}$, $w = d\bar{w}$ and $\beta' = \mu'$. \square

Notation 2.9. For composable Σ -squares

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \bullet & \longrightarrow & \bullet \\ \downarrow \Sigma^\alpha & & \downarrow \\ \bullet & \longrightarrow & \bullet \\ \downarrow \Sigma^\beta & & \downarrow \\ \bullet & \longrightarrow & \bullet \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{ccccc} \bullet & \longrightarrow & \bullet & \longrightarrow & \bullet \\ \downarrow \Sigma^\alpha & & \downarrow \Sigma^\gamma & & \downarrow \\ \bullet & \longrightarrow & \bullet & \longrightarrow & \bullet \end{array}$$

we sometimes refer to the Σ -squares which result by vertical and horizontal composition as $\Sigma^{\beta \circ \alpha}$ and $\Sigma^{\alpha \oplus \gamma}$, respectively.

3 The bicategory of lax fractions

Let \mathcal{X} be a 2-category and let Σ be a subcategory of $\mathcal{X}^{\rightarrow \cong}$ admitting a left calculus of lax fractions. This section is devoted to the description of a **bicategory of lax fractions** $\mathcal{X}[\Sigma_*]$.

The classical calculus of fractions with respect to a class of morphisms Σ in a category \mathcal{X} , introduced by Gabriel and Zisman [2] provides a nice description of a category $\mathcal{X}[\Sigma^{-1}]$ and a functor $P_\Sigma : \mathcal{X} \rightarrow \mathcal{X}[\Sigma^{-1}]$ such that the morphisms of $P_\Sigma[\Sigma]$ are all invertible and P_Σ is universal with respect to this property. Our definition of $\mathcal{X}[\Sigma_*]$ gives a generalization of the classical case. In the next section, we define a pseudofunctor $P_\Sigma : \mathcal{X} \rightarrow \mathcal{X}[\Sigma_*]$ which freely adds to each $P_\Sigma(s)$ with $s \in \text{ob}(\Sigma)$ a right adjoint making $P_\Sigma(s)$ a lari in $\mathcal{X}[\Sigma_*]$ and sends Σ -squares to Beck-Chevalley squares. Moreover, $P_\Sigma(s)$ is universal with respect to these properties. The bicategory $\mathcal{X}[\Sigma_*]$ has strict units, that is, the unitors are just identities. Analogously the pseudofunctor P_Σ is strictly unitary, that is, it strictly preserves units.

The proofs will consist essentially on a convenient calculus of Σ -squares based on the rules of Definition 2.1.

3.1 The categories $\mathcal{X}[\Sigma_*](A, B)$

The objects of $\mathcal{X}[\Sigma_*]$ are just those of \mathcal{X} , the 1-cells are the Σ -cospans (see Definition 3.1) and the 2-cells are \approx -equivalence classes of 2-morphisms (see Definition 3.1 and Definition 3.2). In this subsection we describe the categories $\mathcal{X}[\Sigma_*](A, B)$ for every pair of objects A and B .

Definition 3.1. A cospan $A \xrightarrow{f} I \xleftarrow{r} B$ with $r \in \Sigma$ is said to be a Σ -**cospan** from A to B , and is written (f, I, r) or simply (f, r) .

Given two Σ -cospans (f, r) and (g, s) , both from A to B , a **2-morphism** from (f, r) to (g, s) consists of two Σ -squares and a 2-cell $\alpha: x_1 f \Rightarrow x_2 g$ as in the following diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 A & \xrightarrow{f} & I & \xleftarrow{r} & B \\
 \parallel & & \downarrow x_1 & \Sigma^{\delta_1} & \parallel \\
 & \swarrow \alpha & X & \xleftarrow{x_3} & B \\
 & & \uparrow x_2 & \Sigma^{\delta_2} & \parallel \\
 A & \xrightarrow{g} & J & \xleftarrow{s} & B
 \end{array} \quad (3.1)$$

We denote it by

$$(\alpha, x_1, x_2, x_3, \delta_1, \delta_2): (f, r) \Rightarrow (g, s)$$

or just $(\alpha, x_1, x_2): (f, r) \Rightarrow (g, s)$.

Our bicategory $\mathcal{X}[\Sigma_*]$ has the same objects as \mathcal{X} and has Σ -cospans as 1-cells; the 2-cells are \approx -equivalence classes of 2-morphisms for a convenient \approx -relation, which we describe next.

Definition 3.2. 1. A Σ -**extension** of a 2-morphism as in (3.1) above is any 2-morphism of the form $((\theta_2 \circ g) \cdot (d_x \circ \alpha) \cdot (\theta_1^{-1} \circ f), z_1, z_2)$ indicated by the wavy line part of the following diagram, where the 2-cells $\theta_i: d_x x_i \Rightarrow z_i$, $i = 1, 2$, are invertible:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 A & \xrightarrow{f} & I & \xleftarrow{r} & B \\
 \parallel & & \downarrow x_1 & \Sigma^{\delta_1} & \parallel \\
 & \swarrow \theta_1^{-1} & X & \xleftarrow{z_1} & X \\
 & & \downarrow d_x & \Sigma^{\psi} & \parallel \\
 & & D & \xleftarrow{d} & B \\
 & \swarrow \theta_2 & X & \xleftarrow{z_2} & X \\
 & & \downarrow d_x & \Sigma^{\psi} & \parallel \\
 & & D & \xleftarrow{d} & B \\
 & \swarrow x_2 & X & \xleftarrow{x_3} & B \\
 & & \downarrow x_2 & \Sigma^{\delta_2} & \parallel \\
 A & \xrightarrow{g} & J & \xleftarrow{s} & B
 \end{array}$$

2. We say that two 2-morphisms with common domain and codomain are \approx -**related** if they have a common Σ -extension. This is clearly equivalent to say that two 2-morphisms $(\alpha, x_1, x_2, x_3, \delta_1, \delta_2)$ and $(\beta, y_1, y_2, y_3, \varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2)$ from (f, r) to (g, s) are \approx -

related if there are Σ -squares $\begin{array}{ccc} B & \xrightarrow{x_3} & X \\ \parallel & \Sigma^x & \downarrow d_x \\ B & \xrightarrow{d} & D \end{array}$ and $\begin{array}{ccc} B & \xrightarrow{y_3} & X \\ \parallel & \Sigma^y & \downarrow d_y \\ B & \xrightarrow{d} & D \end{array}$ and invertible 2-cells

$\gamma_i: d_x x_i \Rightarrow d_y y_i$ such that the 2-morphisms given by the wavy lines in the next diagram

are equal.

Lemma 3.3. *The relation \approx is an equivalence relation.*

Proof. Reflexivity and symmetry are obvious. To show transitivity, consider three 2-morphisms $\bar{\alpha} = (\alpha, x_1, x_2, x_3, \delta_1, \delta_2)$, $\bar{\beta} = (\beta, y_1, y_2, y_3, \varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2)$ and $\bar{\gamma} = (\gamma, z_1, z_2, z_3, \zeta_1, \zeta_2)$ from (f, I_1, r_1) to (g, I_2, r_2) , with $\bar{\alpha} \approx \bar{\beta}$ and $\bar{\beta} \approx \bar{\gamma}$. Let the \approx -relation between $\bar{\alpha}$ and $\bar{\beta}$, and the one between $\bar{\beta}$ and $\bar{\gamma}$, be given by the data represented by (3.2) and (3.3) below, respectively.

Using the Σ -squares Σ^{φ_y} and Σ^{χ_y} , combined with Rule 4' of Proposition 2.8, we obtain Σ -squares and an invertible 2-cell θ such that

$$\begin{array}{c}
 B \xrightarrow{y_3} Y \\
 \parallel \quad \Sigma^{\varphi_y} \downarrow d_y \\
 B \xrightarrow{d} D \xrightarrow{\theta} T \\
 \parallel \quad \Sigma^{\eta_1} \downarrow t_1 \\
 B \xrightarrow{t} T
 \end{array}
 \xrightarrow{t_2 e_y}
 \begin{array}{c}
 B \xrightarrow{y_3} Y \\
 \parallel \quad \Sigma^{\chi_y} \downarrow e_y \\
 B \xrightarrow{e} E \\
 \parallel \quad \Sigma^{\eta_2} \downarrow t_2 \\
 B \xrightarrow{t} T
 \end{array}$$

Consequently, we obtain a common Σ -extension of $\bar{\alpha}$ and $\bar{\gamma}$. Namely, for $\mu_i = (t_2 \circ \lambda_{2i})(\theta \circ y_i)(t_1 \circ \lambda_{1i})$, we get the equality

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \begin{array}{c}
 A \xrightarrow{f} I_1 \xleftarrow{r_1} B \\
 \downarrow \scriptstyle t_1 d_x \alpha \\
 \begin{array}{c}
 X \xleftarrow{\mu_1^{-1}} Z \xleftarrow{\mu_1} X \xleftarrow{x_3} B \\
 \downarrow \scriptstyle t_1 d_x \quad \downarrow \scriptstyle t_2 e_z \quad \downarrow \scriptstyle t_1 d_x \quad \downarrow \scriptstyle \Sigma^{\eta_1 \circ \varphi_x} \\
 T \xleftarrow{t} B \\
 \downarrow \scriptstyle t_1 d_x \quad \downarrow \scriptstyle t_2 e_z \quad \downarrow \scriptstyle t_1 d_x \quad \downarrow \scriptstyle \Sigma^{\eta_1 \circ \varphi_x} \\
 X \xrightarrow{\mu_2} Z \xleftarrow{\mu_2} X \xleftarrow{x_3} B \\
 \downarrow \scriptstyle x_2 \quad \downarrow \scriptstyle z_2 \quad \downarrow \scriptstyle x_2 \quad \downarrow \scriptstyle \Sigma^{\delta_2} \\
 A \xrightarrow{g} D \xleftarrow{r_2} B
 \end{array}
 \end{array}
 =
 \begin{array}{c}
 \begin{array}{c}
 A \xrightarrow{f} I_1 \xleftarrow{r_1} B \\
 \downarrow \scriptstyle t_2 e_z \gamma \\
 \begin{array}{c}
 Z \xleftarrow{z_3} B \\
 \downarrow \scriptstyle \Sigma^{\eta_2 \circ \chi_z} \\
 T \xleftarrow{t} B \\
 \downarrow \scriptstyle \Sigma^{\eta_2 \circ \chi_z} \\
 Z \xleftarrow{z_3} B \\
 \downarrow \scriptstyle \Sigma^{\zeta_2} \\
 A \xrightarrow{g} I_2 \xleftarrow{r_2} B
 \end{array}
 \end{array}
 \end{array}$$

showing that $\bar{\alpha} \approx \bar{\gamma}$. \square

Notation 3.4. A **2-cell** between Σ -cospans is an \approx -equivalence class of 2-morphisms between them. Given a 2-morphism $\bar{\alpha} = (\alpha, x_1, x_2, x_3, \delta_1, \delta_2)$, we use the notation $[\bar{\alpha}]$ for indicating the \approx -equivalence class of $\bar{\alpha}$. Sometimes we use $[\alpha, x_1, x_2, x_3, \delta_1, \delta_2]$ or simply $[\alpha, x_1, x_2]$.

We present now the vertical composition of 2-cells between Σ -cospans. For that we define first the vertical composition between 2-morphisms and then take the corresponding \approx -equivalence classes.

Definition 3.5. Vertical composition. Let $\bar{\alpha} = (\alpha, x_1, x_2, x_3, \delta_1, \delta_2): (f, r) \Rightarrow (g, s)$ and $\bar{\beta} = (\beta, y_1, y_2, y_3, \varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2): (g, s) \Rightarrow (h, t)$ be 2-morphisms, as illustrated in the diagram

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \begin{array}{c}
 A \xrightarrow{f} I \xleftarrow{r} B \\
 \parallel \quad \downarrow \scriptstyle x_1 \quad \downarrow \scriptstyle \Sigma^{\delta_1} \quad \parallel \\
 \alpha \swarrow \quad X \xleftarrow{x_3} B \\
 \searrow \quad \uparrow \scriptstyle x_2 \quad \downarrow \scriptstyle \Sigma^{\delta_2} \quad \parallel \\
 A \xrightarrow{g} J \xleftarrow{s} B \\
 \parallel \quad \downarrow \scriptstyle y_1 \quad \downarrow \scriptstyle \Sigma^{\varepsilon_1} \quad \parallel \\
 \beta \swarrow \quad Y \xleftarrow{y_3} B \\
 \searrow \quad \uparrow \scriptstyle y_2 \quad \downarrow \scriptstyle \Sigma^{\varepsilon_2} \quad \parallel \\
 A \xrightarrow{h} K \xleftarrow{t} B
 \end{array}
 \end{array} \tag{3.4}$$

Using the Σ -squares Σ^{δ_2} and Σ^{ε_1} and Rule 4', we obtain new Σ -squares and an invertible 2-cell γ performing the following equality between pasting diagrams:

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \begin{array}{c}
 B \xrightarrow{s} J \xrightarrow{y_1} Y \\
 \parallel \quad \downarrow \scriptstyle x_2 \quad \downarrow \scriptstyle \Sigma^{\delta_2} \quad \parallel \\
 B \xrightarrow{x_3} X \xrightarrow{\gamma} Y \\
 \parallel \quad \downarrow \scriptstyle d_x \quad \downarrow \scriptstyle \Sigma^{\varphi_x} \quad \parallel \\
 B \xrightarrow{u} D \xleftarrow{d_y} Y
 \end{array}
 =
 \begin{array}{c}
 \begin{array}{c}
 B \xrightarrow{s} J \xrightarrow{y_1} Y \\
 \parallel \quad \downarrow \scriptstyle y_1 \quad \downarrow \scriptstyle \Sigma^{\varepsilon_1} \quad \parallel \\
 B \xrightarrow{y_3} Y \xrightarrow{d_y} D \\
 \parallel \quad \downarrow \scriptstyle d_y \quad \downarrow \scriptstyle \Sigma^{\varphi_y} \quad \parallel \\
 B \xrightarrow{u} D
 \end{array}
 \end{array} \tag{3.5}$$

The vertical composition of the two 2-morphisms is any resulting 2-morphism $\bar{\beta} \circ \bar{\alpha}$ represented

by the following diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 A & \xrightarrow{f} & I & \xleftarrow{r} & B \\
 \parallel & & \downarrow x_1 \Sigma^{\delta_1} & & \parallel \\
 & \searrow \alpha & X & \xleftarrow{x_3} & B \\
 & & \downarrow d_x \Sigma^{\varphi_x} & & \parallel \\
 A & \xrightarrow{g} & J & \xrightarrow{\Psi \gamma} & D & \xleftarrow{u} & B \\
 \parallel & & \downarrow y_1 & & \uparrow \Sigma^{\varphi_y} & & \parallel \\
 & \searrow \beta & Y & \xleftarrow{y_3} & B \\
 & & \uparrow y_2 \Sigma^{\varepsilon_2} & & \parallel \\
 A & \xrightarrow{h} & K & \xleftarrow{t} & B
 \end{array} \tag{3.6}$$

The corresponding vertical composition of the two 2-cells is given by

$$[\bar{\beta}] \cdot [\bar{\alpha}] = [\bar{\beta} \cdot \bar{\alpha}].$$

We now show that it is well-defined.

Proposition 3.6. *The vertical composition between 2-cells is well-defined.*

Proof. Consider 2-morphisms $\bar{\alpha} = (\alpha, x_1, x_2, x_3, \delta_1, \delta_2): (f, r) \Rightarrow (g, s)$ and $\bar{\beta} = (\beta, y_1, y_2, y_3, \varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2): (g, s) \Rightarrow (h, t)$ as above in Equation (3.4).

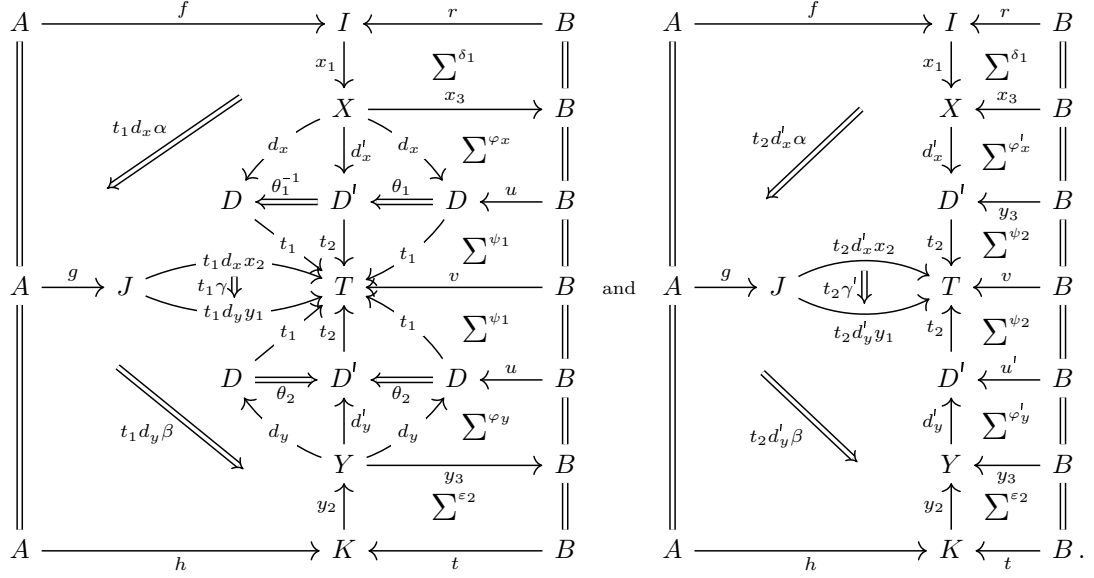
(1) We first show that the composition does not depend on the the choice of the Σ -squares and the isomorphisms $\gamma: d_x x_2 \Rightarrow d_y y_1$ in Equation (3.5). Indeed, suppose we have two different choices of this data with $\gamma: d_x x_2 \Rightarrow d_y y_1$ and $\gamma': d'_x x_2 \Rightarrow d'_y y_1$ as in the diagrams

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 B \xrightarrow{x_3} X & & B \xrightarrow{x_3} X \\
 \parallel \Sigma^{\varphi_x} \downarrow d_x & & \parallel \Sigma^{\varphi'_x} \downarrow d'_x \\
 B \xrightarrow{u} D & \text{and} & B \xrightarrow{u'} D' \\
 \parallel \Sigma^{\varphi_y} \uparrow d_y & & \parallel \Sigma^{\varphi'_y} \uparrow d'_y \\
 B \xrightarrow{y_3} Y & & B \xrightarrow{y_3} Y.
 \end{array}$$

By Rule 4 of Proposition 2.8, we then obtain Σ -squares and invertible 2-cells θ_i , $i = 1, 2$, such that

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 B \xrightarrow{x_3} X & & B \xrightarrow{x_3} X \\
 \parallel \Sigma^{\varphi_x} \downarrow d_x & & \parallel \Sigma^{\varphi'_x} \downarrow d'_x \\
 B \xrightarrow{u} D \xRightarrow{\theta_1} D' & & B \xrightarrow{u'} D' \\
 \parallel \Sigma^{\psi_1} \downarrow t_1 & & \parallel \Sigma^{\psi_2} \downarrow t_2 \\
 B \xrightarrow{v} T & = & B \xrightarrow{v} T \\
 \parallel \Sigma^{\psi_1} \uparrow t_1 & & \parallel \Sigma^{\psi_2} \uparrow t_2 \\
 B \xrightarrow{u} D \xRightarrow{\theta_2} D' & & B \xrightarrow{u'} D' \\
 \parallel \Sigma^{\varphi_y} \uparrow d_y & & \parallel \Sigma^{\varphi'_y} \uparrow d'_y \\
 B \xrightarrow{y_3} Y & & B \xrightarrow{y_3} Y.
 \end{array}$$

These can be used to form Σ -extensions each of the two compositions:



For these two Σ -extensions to coincide we would need the 2-cells on the left-hand-side of each diagram to be equal. That is, we want the outer rectangle of the following diagram to commute.

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 t_1 d_x x_1 f & \xrightarrow{t_1 d_x \alpha} & t_1 d_x x_2 g & \xrightarrow{t_1 \gamma g} & t_1 d_y y_1 g & \xrightarrow{t_1 d_y \beta} & t_1 d_y y_2 h \\
 \theta_1^{-1} x_1 f \uparrow & & \theta_1^{-1} x_2 g \uparrow & & \downarrow \theta_2 y_1 g & & \downarrow \theta_2 y_2 h \\
 t_2 d'_x x_1 f & \xrightarrow{t_2 d'_x \alpha} & t_2 d'_x x_2 g & \xrightarrow{t_2 \gamma' g} & t_2 d'_y y_1 g & \xrightarrow{t_2 d'_y \beta} & t_2 d'_y y_2 h
 \end{array}$$

The left and right squares commute by naturality and so it suffices to show the central square commutes. Actually, this square might not commute, but we can force it by passing to a further Σ -extension. We want to force $\theta_2 y_1 \cdot t_1 \gamma \cdot \theta_1^{-1} x_2 = t_2 \gamma'$ using Equification. Thus, we consider the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 B & \xrightarrow{s} & J \\
 \parallel & \Sigma^{\delta_2} \downarrow x_2 & \searrow y_1 \\
 B & \xrightarrow{x_3} & X \\
 \parallel & \Sigma^{\varphi'_x} d'_x \downarrow & \xrightarrow[t_2 \gamma']{t_2 \gamma'} Y \\
 B & \xrightarrow{u'} & D' \\
 \parallel & \Sigma^{\psi_2} \downarrow t_2 & \nearrow t_2 \\
 B & \xrightarrow{v} & T
 \end{array}$$

where $\zeta = \theta_2 y_1 \cdot t_1 \gamma \cdot \theta_1^{-1} x_2$. To apply Equification we must first show $t_2 \gamma' s = \zeta s$. Note that the composite of the above squares with the map $t_2 \gamma' s$ is equal to $\Sigma^{\psi_2 \circ \varphi'_y \circ \varepsilon_1}$ by the

assumption on γ' . On the other hand, the composite of the squares with ζs is

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\begin{array}{c}
B \xrightarrow{s} J \\
\parallel \quad \Sigma^{\delta_2} \downarrow x_2 \searrow y_1 \\
B \xrightarrow{x_3} X \xrightarrow{\gamma} Y \\
\parallel \quad \Sigma^{\varphi_x} d_x \downarrow \quad \quad \downarrow d_y \quad \quad \downarrow d'_y \\
B \xrightarrow{u'} D' \xrightarrow{\theta_1^{-1}} D \xrightarrow{\theta_2} D' \\
\parallel \quad \Sigma^{\psi_2} t_2 \downarrow \quad \quad \swarrow t_1 \quad \quad \searrow t_2 \\
B \xrightarrow{v} T
\end{array}
&
=
&
\begin{array}{c}
B \xrightarrow{s} J \\
\parallel \quad \Sigma^{\delta_2} \downarrow x_2 \searrow y_1 \\
B \xrightarrow{x_3} X \xrightarrow{\gamma} Y \\
\parallel \quad \Sigma^{\varphi_x} d_x \downarrow \quad \quad \downarrow d_y \quad \quad \downarrow d'_y \\
B \xrightarrow{u'} D \xrightarrow{\theta_2} D' \\
\parallel \quad \Sigma^{\psi_1} t_1 \downarrow \quad \quad \swarrow t_2 \\
B \xrightarrow{v} T
\end{array} \\
=
&
&
=
\end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\begin{array}{c}
B \xrightarrow{s} J \\
\parallel \quad \Sigma^{\varepsilon_1} \downarrow y_1 \\
B \xrightarrow{x_3} Y \\
\parallel \quad \Sigma^{\varphi_y} d_y \downarrow \quad \quad \searrow d'_y \\
B \xrightarrow{u'} D \xrightarrow{\theta_2} D' \\
\parallel \quad \Sigma^{\psi_1} t_1 \downarrow \quad \quad \swarrow t_2 \\
B \xrightarrow{v} T
\end{array}
&
=
&
\begin{array}{c}
B \xrightarrow{s} J \\
\parallel \quad \Sigma^{\varepsilon_1} \downarrow y_1 \\
B \xrightarrow{x_3} Y \\
\parallel \quad \Sigma^{\varphi'_y} \downarrow d'_y \\
B \xrightarrow{u'} D' \\
\parallel \quad \Sigma^{\psi_2} \downarrow t_2 \\
B \xrightarrow{v} T
\end{array}
\end{array}$$

So the composites are the same, and since the 2-cells in the squares are invertible, we indeed have $t_2 \gamma' s = \zeta s$. So by Equification, we obtain a map $q: T \rightarrow Q$ and associated Σ -square that allows us to pass to a common Σ -extension of the two 2-morphisms above, as required.

(2) We now show that vertical composition of 2-morphisms respects \approx — that is, if $\overline{\alpha_1} \approx \overline{\alpha_2}$ and $\overline{\beta_1} \approx \overline{\beta_2}$ then $\overline{\beta_1} \cdot \overline{\alpha_1} \approx \overline{\beta_2} \cdot \overline{\alpha_2}$. By transitivity and symmetry, we may assume $\overline{\alpha_2}$ is a Σ -extension of $\overline{\alpha_1} = \overline{\alpha}$ and $\overline{\beta_2}$ is a Σ -extension of $\overline{\beta_1} = \overline{\beta}$ without loss of generality. Moreover, again by transitivity, we may assume α and β are replaced in turn. We will consider the case α , but the case of β is entirely analogous.

Suppose $\overline{\alpha_2}$ is given by the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
A & \xrightarrow{f} & I & \xleftarrow{r} & B \\
\parallel & & \downarrow x_1 & \quad \quad \downarrow x_1 & \parallel \\
& & X & \xleftarrow{\theta_1^{-1}} z_1 & \xleftarrow{\theta_1} X \xleftarrow{x_3} B \\
& & \downarrow w & \quad \quad \downarrow w & \parallel \\
& & X' & \xleftarrow{z_3} & B \\
& & \downarrow w & \quad \quad \downarrow w & \parallel \\
& & X & \xrightarrow{\theta_2} z_2 & \xleftarrow{\theta_2} X \xleftarrow{x_3} B \\
& & \downarrow x_2 & \quad \quad \downarrow x_2 & \parallel \\
A & \xrightarrow{g} & J & \xleftarrow{s} & B
\end{array}$$

and suppose the composite $\overline{\beta} \cdot \overline{\alpha_2}$ is defined using the data $d_x: X' \rightarrow D, d_y: Y \rightarrow D, u: B \rightarrow$

D, φ_x, φ_y and γ . We then have

$$\begin{array}{c}
 B \xrightarrow{s} J \\
 \parallel \quad \downarrow \Sigma^{\delta_2} \quad \downarrow x_2 \\
 B \xrightarrow{x_3} X \xrightarrow{\theta_2} z_2 \\
 \parallel \quad \downarrow \Sigma^{\chi} \quad \downarrow w \\
 B \xrightarrow{z_3} X' \xrightarrow{\gamma} Y \\
 \parallel \quad \downarrow \Sigma^{\varphi_x} \quad \downarrow d_x \\
 B \xrightarrow{u} D \xleftarrow{d_y} Y
 \end{array}
 \quad = \quad
 \begin{array}{c}
 B \xrightarrow{s} J \\
 \parallel \quad \downarrow \Sigma^{\varepsilon_1} \quad \downarrow y_1 \\
 B \xrightarrow{y_3} Y \\
 \parallel \quad \downarrow \Sigma^{\varphi_y} \quad \downarrow d_y \\
 B \xrightarrow{u} D,
 \end{array}$$

yielding the composite

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 A & \xrightarrow{f} & I & \xleftarrow{r} & B \\
 \parallel & & \downarrow x_1 & \swarrow \Sigma^{\delta_1} & \parallel \\
 & & X & \xleftarrow{\theta_1^{-1}} X & \xleftarrow{x_3} B \\
 & & \downarrow w & \swarrow \Sigma^{\chi} & \parallel \\
 & & X' & \xleftarrow{z_3} & B \\
 \parallel & & \downarrow d_x & \swarrow \Sigma^{\varphi_x} & \parallel \\
 A & \xrightarrow{g} & J & \xrightarrow{\gamma} & D \\
 \parallel & & \downarrow y_1 & \swarrow \Sigma^{\varphi_y} & \parallel \\
 & & Y & \xleftarrow{y_3} & B \\
 \parallel & & \downarrow y_2 & \swarrow \Sigma^{\varepsilon_2} & \parallel \\
 A & \xrightarrow{h} & K & \xleftarrow{t} & B
 \end{array}$$

We now observe that this is a Σ -extension (using $d_x\theta_1$ and $\text{id}_{d_y y_2}$) of the composite for $\overline{\beta} \cdot \overline{\alpha}$ given by the data $d_x w, d_y, u, \varphi_x \odot \chi, \varphi_y$ and $\gamma \cdot d_x \theta$, and hence the two composites are equivalent. \square

Remark 3.7. Identity 2-cells. The identity 2-cell on the Σ -cospan (f, I, r) is $[\text{id}_f, 1_I, 1_I, r, \text{id}_r, \text{id}_r]$. It is represented by any 2-morphism of the form $[\text{id}_{df}, d, d, u, \delta, \delta]$.

Proposition 3.8. *The vertical composition between 2-cells is associative and the identity 2-cells act as identities.*

Proof. Consider the following triple composite.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
A & \xrightarrow{f} & I_1 & \xleftarrow{r_1} & B \\
\parallel & & \downarrow x_1 & \Sigma^{\delta_1} & \parallel \\
& \swarrow \alpha & X & \xleftarrow{x_3} & B \\
& & \uparrow x_2 & \Sigma^{\delta_2} & \parallel \\
A & \xrightarrow{g} & I_2 & \xleftarrow{r_2} & B \\
\parallel & & \downarrow y_1 & \Sigma^{\varepsilon_1} & \parallel \\
& \swarrow \beta & Y & \xleftarrow{y_3} & B \\
& & \uparrow y_2 & \Sigma^{\varepsilon_2} & \parallel \\
A & \xrightarrow{h} & K & \xleftarrow{r_3} & B \\
\parallel & & \downarrow z_1 & \Sigma^{\zeta_1} & \parallel \\
& \swarrow \gamma & Z & \xleftarrow{z_3} & B \\
& & \uparrow z_2 & \Sigma^{\zeta_2} & \parallel \\
A & \xrightarrow{j} & I_4 & \xleftarrow{r_4} & B
\end{array}$$

We must show that the two ways of forming this composite, $(\bar{\gamma} \cdot \bar{\beta}) \cdot \bar{\alpha}$ and $\bar{\gamma} \cdot (\bar{\beta} \cdot \bar{\alpha})$, give equivalent results. For the former of these we find $\bar{\gamma} \cdot \bar{\beta}$ is given by

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
A & \xrightarrow{g} & I_2 & \xleftarrow{r_2} & B \\
\parallel & & \downarrow y_1 & \Sigma^{\varepsilon_1} & \parallel \\
& \swarrow \beta & Y & \xleftarrow{y_3} & B \\
& & \downarrow p_{\mathfrak{z}} & \Sigma^{\eta_y} & \parallel \\
A & \xrightarrow{h} & I_3 & \xleftarrow{v} & B \\
& \swarrow \gamma & Z & \xleftarrow{z_3} & B \\
& & \downarrow z_2 & \Sigma^{\zeta_2} & \parallel \\
A & \xrightarrow{j} & I_4 & \xleftarrow{r_4} & B,
\end{array}$$

and hence $(\bar{\gamma} \cdot \bar{\beta}) \cdot \bar{\alpha}$ is given by

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
A & \xrightarrow{f} & I_1 & \xleftarrow{r_1} & B \\
\parallel & & \downarrow x_1 & \Sigma^{\delta_1} & \parallel \\
& \swarrow \alpha & X & \xleftarrow{x_3} & B \\
& & \downarrow q_x & \Sigma^{\theta_x} & \parallel \\
A & \xrightarrow{g} & I_2 & \xleftarrow{w} & B \\
& \swarrow \beta & Y & \xleftarrow{p_y} & B \\
& & \downarrow y_1 & \Sigma^{\theta_y} & \parallel \\
& & \downarrow \psi & \Sigma^{\theta_y} & \parallel \\
A & \xrightarrow{h} & I_3 & \xleftarrow{p_z} & B \\
& \swarrow \gamma & Z & \xleftarrow{z_3} & B \\
& & \downarrow z_1 & \Sigma^{\zeta_2} & \parallel \\
A & \xrightarrow{j} & I_4 & \xleftarrow{r_4} & B.
\end{array}$$

(3.7)

The data used for these compositions satisfy

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 B & \xrightarrow{r_3} & I_3 \\
 \parallel & \Sigma^{\varepsilon_2} & \downarrow y_2 \\
 B & \xrightarrow{y_3} & Y \\
 \parallel & \Sigma^{\eta_y} & \downarrow p_y \\
 B & \xrightarrow{v} & P
 \end{array}
 \begin{array}{c}
 \searrow z_1 \\
 \xrightarrow{\omega} Z \\
 \swarrow p_z
 \end{array}
 =
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 B & \xrightarrow{r_3} & I_3 \\
 \parallel & \Sigma^{\zeta_1} & \downarrow z_1 \\
 B & \xrightarrow{z_3} & Z \\
 \parallel & \Sigma^{\eta_z} & \downarrow p_z \\
 B & \xrightarrow{v} & P
 \end{array}
 \quad (3.8)$$

and

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 B & \xrightarrow{r_2} & I_2 \\
 \parallel & \Sigma^{\delta_2} & \downarrow x_2 \\
 B & \xrightarrow{x_3} & X \\
 \parallel & \Sigma^{\theta_x} & \downarrow q_x \\
 B & \xrightarrow{w} & Q
 \end{array}
 \begin{array}{c}
 \searrow p_y y_1 \\
 \xrightarrow{\psi} P \\
 \swarrow q_y
 \end{array}
 =
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 B & \xrightarrow{r_2} & I_2 \\
 \parallel & \Sigma^{\varepsilon_1} & \downarrow y_1 \\
 B & \xrightarrow{y_3} & Y \\
 \parallel & \Sigma^{\eta_y} & \downarrow p_y \\
 B & \xrightarrow{v} & P \\
 \parallel & \Sigma^{\theta_y} & \downarrow q_y \\
 B & \xrightarrow{w} & Q
 \end{array}
 \quad (3.9)$$

As for the other composite, we can form a composite of $\bar{\beta} \cdot \bar{\alpha}$ using the Σ -squares Σ^{θ_x} and $\Sigma^{\theta_y \odot \eta_y}$ from Equation (3.9) above.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 A & \xrightarrow{f} & I_1 & \xleftarrow{r_1} & B \\
 \parallel & \searrow \alpha & \downarrow x_1 & \Sigma^{\delta_1} & \parallel \\
 & & X & \xleftarrow{x_3} & B \\
 & & \downarrow q_x & \Sigma^{\theta_x} & \parallel \\
 A & \xrightarrow{g} & I_2 & \xleftarrow{w} & B \\
 \parallel & \searrow \beta & \downarrow \psi & \Sigma^{\theta_y} & \parallel \\
 & & Q & \xleftarrow{v} & B \\
 & & \uparrow q_y & \Sigma^{\eta_y} & \parallel \\
 & & P & \xleftarrow{y_3} & B \\
 \parallel & & \uparrow y_2 & \Sigma^{\varepsilon_2} & \parallel \\
 A & \xrightarrow{h} & I_3 & \xleftarrow{r_3} & B
 \end{array}$$

We then find $\bar{\gamma} \cdot (\bar{\beta} \cdot \bar{\alpha})$ using the data

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 B & \xrightarrow{r_3} & I_3 \\
 \parallel & \Sigma^{(*)} & \downarrow q_y p_q y_2 \\
 B & \xrightarrow{w} & Q \\
 \parallel & \Sigma^{\kappa_y} & \downarrow e_y \\
 B & \xrightarrow{e} & E
 \end{array}
 \begin{array}{c}
 \searrow z_1 \\
 \xrightarrow{\varphi} Z \\
 \swarrow e_z
 \end{array}
 =
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 B & \xrightarrow{r_3} & I_3 \\
 \parallel & \Sigma^{\zeta_1} & \downarrow z_1 \\
 B & \xrightarrow{z_3} & Z \\
 \parallel & \Sigma^{\kappa_z} & \downarrow e_z \\
 B & \xrightarrow{e} & E
 \end{array}
 \quad (3.10)$$

(where $\Sigma^{(*)}$ denotes $\Sigma^{\theta_y \odot \eta_y \odot \varepsilon_2}$) to be

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 A & \xrightarrow{f} & I_1 & \xleftarrow{r_1} & B \\
 \parallel & & \searrow \alpha & & \parallel \\
 & & X & \xleftarrow{x_3} & B \\
 & & \downarrow q_x & & \parallel \\
 A & \xrightarrow{g} & I_2 & \xleftarrow{w} & B \\
 \parallel & & \downarrow \psi & & \parallel \\
 & & Q & \xleftarrow{e} & B \\
 & & \downarrow e_b & & \parallel \\
 & & E & \xleftarrow{e} & B \\
 & & \uparrow e_z & & \parallel \\
 A & \xrightarrow{h} & I_3 & \xleftarrow{z_3} & B \\
 \parallel & & \downarrow \gamma & & \parallel \\
 A & \xrightarrow{j} & I_4 & \xleftarrow{r_4} & B
 \end{array}
 \quad (3.11)$$

We want to show that this is an equivalent 2-morphism to the composite (3.11) above. By Rule 4' of Proposition 2.8 applied to Σ^{κ_z} and $\Sigma^{\kappa_y \odot \theta_y \odot \eta_z}$ we obtain

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 B & \xrightarrow{z_3} & Z \\
 \parallel & & \parallel \\
 B & \xrightarrow{e} & E \\
 \parallel & & \parallel \\
 B & \xrightarrow{\hat{e}'} & \widehat{E}
 \end{array}
 \begin{array}{c}
 \downarrow e_z \\
 \downarrow \hat{e}
 \end{array}
 \begin{array}{c}
 \nearrow e_y q_y p_z \\
 \nwarrow \hat{e}
 \end{array}
 =
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 B & \xrightarrow{z_3} & Z \\
 \parallel & & \parallel \\
 B & \xrightarrow{v} & P \\
 \parallel & & \parallel \\
 B & \xrightarrow{w} & Q \\
 \parallel & & \parallel \\
 B & \xrightarrow{e} & E \\
 \parallel & & \parallel \\
 B & \xrightarrow{\hat{e}'} & \widehat{E}
 \end{array}
 \quad (3.12)$$

Using \hat{e} and v to form a Σ -extension of $\bar{\gamma} \cdot (\bar{\beta} \cdot \bar{\alpha})$ and $\hat{e}e_y$ to form an extension of $(\bar{\gamma} \cdot \bar{\beta}) \cdot \bar{\alpha}$, the relevant parts of the 2-morphism diagrams become:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 A & \xrightarrow{g} & I_2 & \xrightarrow{x_2} & X & \xleftarrow{x_3} & B \\
 \parallel & & \downarrow y_1 & & \downarrow \psi & & \parallel \\
 & & Y & \xrightarrow{p_y} & P & \xrightarrow{q_y} & Q \\
 & & \uparrow y_2 & & \downarrow e_y & & \parallel \\
 & & & & E & \xleftarrow{e} & B \\
 & & & & \downarrow \hat{e} & & \parallel \\
 & & & & \widehat{E} & \xleftarrow{\hat{e}'} & B \\
 & & & & \uparrow \hat{e} & & \parallel \\
 & & & & E & \xleftarrow{e} & B \\
 & & & & \uparrow e_z & & \parallel \\
 A & \xrightarrow{h} & I_3 & \xrightarrow{z_1} & Z & \xleftarrow{z_3} & B
 \end{array}$$

and

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
A & \xrightarrow{g} & I_2 & \xrightarrow{x_2} & X & \xleftarrow{x_3} & B \\
\parallel & & \downarrow & & \downarrow q_x & \Sigma^{\theta_x} & \parallel \\
& & & & Q & \xleftarrow{w} & B \\
& & & & \downarrow e_y & \Sigma^{\kappa_y} & \parallel \\
& & & & E & \xleftarrow{e} & B \\
& & & & \downarrow \hat{e} & \Sigma^{\lambda} & \parallel \\
& & & & \hat{E} & \xleftarrow{\hat{e}^i} & B \\
& & & & \uparrow \hat{e} & \Sigma^{\lambda} & \parallel \\
& & & & E & \xleftarrow{e} & B \\
& & & & \uparrow e_y & \Sigma^{\kappa_y} & \parallel \\
& & & & Q & \xleftarrow{w} & B \\
& & & & \uparrow q_y & \Sigma^{\theta_y} & \parallel \\
& & & & Y & \xrightarrow{p_y} & P & \xleftarrow{v} & B \\
& & & & \uparrow y_2 & \omega \downarrow & p_z \uparrow & \Sigma^{\eta_z} & \parallel \\
A & \xrightarrow{h} & I_3 & \xrightarrow{z_1} & Z & \xleftarrow{z_3} & B.
\end{array}$$

Note that the Σ -squares on the right-hand side of each diagram agree by Equation (3.12). For the remaining 2-cells, we have the composites $vz_1h \cdot \hat{e}\varphi h \cdot \hat{e}e_yq_y p_y \beta \cdot \hat{e}e_y \psi g$ and $\hat{e}e_yq_y \omega h \cdot \hat{e}e_yq_y p_y \beta \cdot \hat{e}e_y \psi g$. These will agree if $vz_1 \cdot \hat{e}\varphi = \hat{e}e_yq_y \omega$. Composing $\Sigma^{\lambda \odot \kappa_y \odot \theta_y \odot \eta_y \odot \varepsilon_2}$ with $\hat{e}\varphi$ and vz_1 and using Equation (3.10) and Equation (3.12) obtain $\Sigma^{\lambda \odot \kappa_y \odot \theta_y \odot \eta_z \odot \zeta_1}$. Composing the same Σ -square with $\hat{e}e_yq_y \omega$ and using Equation (3.8) we obtain the same result. Since the 2-cells in the Σ -squares are invertible, this implies $vz_1r_3 \cdot \hat{e}\varphi r_3 = \hat{e}e_yq_y \omega r_3$ and hence we can apply Equifcation to obtain an extension where the desired equality indeed holds. Thus, we have proved associativity.

We now show that the identity 2-cells are indeed identities with respect to vertical composition. To form the composite $\bar{\alpha} \circ \bar{\text{id}}_{(f, I_1, r_1)}$ we use the data

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
B & \xrightarrow{r} & I_1 \\
\parallel & \Sigma^{\text{id}} & \parallel \\
B & \xrightarrow{r} & I_1 \\
\parallel & \Sigma^{\delta_1} & \parallel \\
B & \xrightarrow{x_3} & X
\end{array}
\begin{array}{c}
\searrow x_1 \\
\text{id} \\
\downarrow x_1 \\
\text{id}
\end{array}
X
=
\begin{array}{ccc}
B & \xrightarrow{r} & I_1 \\
\parallel & \Sigma^{\delta_1} & \parallel \\
B & \xrightarrow{x_3} & X \\
\parallel & \Sigma^{\text{id}} & \parallel \\
B & \xrightarrow{x_3} & X
\end{array}$$

and easily compute the composite to be equal to $\bar{\alpha}$. The composite $\bar{\text{id}}_{(g, I_2, r_2)} \circ \bar{\alpha}$ can be shown to also be equal to $\bar{\alpha}$ in a similar way. \square

3.2 Σ -schemes and Ω 2-cells

In order to define the horizontal composition and the associator, and prove the due properties on it, we will make use of a special kind of 2-cells between Σ -cospans that we present in this subsection. Here we define Σ -schemes, Σ -paths and Ω 2-cells, and state the properties which will have a role in the following. Most of the proofs are provided in Appendix A.

1. The basic Ω 2-cells. Departing from $I \xleftarrow{r} B \xrightarrow{g} J$, with $r \in \Sigma$, let us have two Σ -squares

Σ^α and $\Sigma^{\alpha'}$ as below, and apply Rule 4' to obtain the equality

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 B \xrightarrow{r} I & & B \xrightarrow{r} I \\
 g \downarrow \quad \Sigma^\alpha \quad \downarrow g_1 & \searrow g_2 & g \downarrow \quad \Sigma^{\alpha'} \quad \downarrow g_2 \\
 J \xrightarrow{r_1} I_1 \xrightarrow{\theta} I_2 & = & J \xrightarrow{r_2} I_2 \\
 \parallel \quad \Sigma^{\delta_1} \quad \downarrow d_1 & & \parallel \quad \Sigma^{\delta_2} \quad \downarrow d_2 \\
 J \xrightarrow{d} D & & J \xrightarrow{d} D
 \end{array} \quad (3.13)$$

where θ is invertible. This way we get a 2-morphism as follows:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 I & \xrightarrow{g_1} & I_1 & \xleftarrow{r_1} & J \\
 \parallel & & \downarrow d_1 & \Sigma^{\delta_1} & \parallel \\
 & \swarrow \theta & D & \xleftarrow{d} & J \\
 & & \uparrow d_2 & \Sigma^{\delta_2} & \\
 I & \xrightarrow{g_2} & I_2 & \xleftarrow{r_2} & J.
 \end{array}$$

It is easy to see that this 2-morphism is \approx -independent of the data used in the application of Rule 4'. (Indeed, given $e_1, e_2, e, \varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2$ and θ' , instead of $d_1, d_2, d, \delta_1, \delta_2$ and θ , in (3.13), apply

Rule 4 to $\begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{r_1} \\ \parallel \Sigma^{\delta_1} \downarrow d_1 \\ \xrightarrow{d} \end{array}$ and $\begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{r_1} \\ \parallel \Sigma^{\varepsilon_1} \downarrow e_1 \\ \xrightarrow{e} \end{array}$. This leads to a commom Σ -extension of $[\theta, d_1, d_2, d, \delta_1, \delta_2]$

and $[\theta', e_1, e_2, e, \varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_2]$.)

We say that this 2-morphism and the corresponding 2-cell of $\mathcal{X}[\Sigma_*]$ are of **basic Ω type**. We denote this 2-cell by

$$\Omega_{\alpha, \alpha'}: (g_1, r_1) \Rightarrow (g_2, r_2)$$

or just by Ω . If we have any $f: A \rightarrow I$ and $s: C \rightarrow J$ in Σ , we use also the notation

$$\Omega_{\alpha, \alpha'}: (g_1 f, r_1 s) \Rightarrow (g_2 f, r_2 s)$$

for the 2-cell obtained composing with f and s on the left and on the right, respectively. This 2-cell is also said to be of **basic Ω type**.

We have the following:

Lemma 3.9. For Σ -squares $\begin{array}{ccc} B & \xrightarrow{r} & I \\ g \downarrow & \Sigma^{\alpha_i} & \downarrow g_i \\ J & \xrightarrow{r_i} & B_i \end{array}, i = 1, 2, 3,$

(1) $\Omega_{\alpha_1, \alpha_2}$ is an invertible 2-cell between Σ -cospans and $\Omega_{\alpha_1, \alpha_2}^{-1} = \Omega_{\alpha_2, \alpha_1}$;

(2) $\Omega_{\alpha_2, \alpha_3} \cdot \Omega_{\alpha_1, \alpha_2} = \Omega_{\alpha_1, \alpha_3}$.

Proof. (1) is clear.

(2) Successively, consider invertible 2-cells in \mathcal{X} , θ_1 and θ_2 , such that

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \begin{array}{ccc} B \xrightarrow{r} I & & \\ g \downarrow \Sigma^{\alpha_1} \downarrow g_1 & \searrow g_2 & \\ J \xrightarrow{r_1} B_1 \xrightarrow{\theta_1} B_2 & & \\ \parallel \Sigma \downarrow d_1 & & \\ J \xrightarrow{d} D & \swarrow d_2 & \end{array} & = & \begin{array}{ccc} B \xrightarrow{r} I & & \\ g \downarrow \Sigma^{\alpha_2} \downarrow g_2 & & \\ J \xrightarrow{r_2} B_2 & & \\ \parallel \Sigma \downarrow d_2 & & \\ J \xrightarrow{d} D & & \end{array} \\
 & \text{and} & \\
 \begin{array}{ccc} B \xrightarrow{r} I & & \\ g \downarrow \Sigma^{\alpha_2} \downarrow g_2 & \searrow g_3 & \\ J \xrightarrow{r_2} B_1 & & \\ \parallel \Sigma \downarrow d_2 & \swarrow \theta_2 & \\ J \xrightarrow{d} D & & \\ \parallel \Sigma \downarrow e_1 & & \\ J \xrightarrow{e} E & \swarrow e_2 & \end{array} & = & \begin{array}{ccc} B \xrightarrow{r} I & & \\ g \downarrow \Sigma^{\alpha_3} \downarrow g_3 & & \\ J \xrightarrow{r_3} B_3 & & \\ \parallel \Sigma \downarrow e_2 & & \\ J \xrightarrow{e} E & & \end{array}
 \end{array}$$

We obtain the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
I & \xrightarrow{g_1} & B_1 & \xleftarrow{r_1} & J \\
\parallel & \swarrow e_1 d_1 & \downarrow \Sigma & \parallel & \\
& & E & \xleftarrow{e} & J \\
& \swarrow e_1 \circ \theta_1 & \uparrow e_1 d_2 & \parallel & \\
& & \Sigma & \parallel & \\
I & \xrightarrow{g_2} & B_2 & \xleftarrow{r_2} & J \\
\parallel & \swarrow \theta_2 & \downarrow \Sigma & \parallel & \\
& & E & \xleftarrow{e} & J \\
& \swarrow e_2 & \uparrow \Sigma & \parallel & \\
& & \Sigma & \parallel & \\
I & \xrightarrow{g_3} & B_3 & \xleftarrow{r_3} & J
\end{array}$$

Vertically, this diagram is the juxtaposition of two 2-morphisms which represent $\Omega_{\alpha_1, \alpha_2}$ and $\Omega_{\alpha_2, \alpha_3}$. Clearly, $(\theta_2 \cdot (e_1 \circ \theta_1), e_1 d_1, e_2)$ is a representative of the vertical composition $\Omega_{\alpha_2, \alpha_3} \cdot \Omega_{\alpha_1, \alpha_2}$, and also a representative of $\Omega_{\alpha_1, \alpha_3}$. \square

2. Σ -schemes and Σ -paths. A Σ -scheme is any diagram of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
& & \bullet \xrightarrow{r_1} \bullet \\
& & \downarrow g_1 \\
& & \bullet \xrightarrow{r_2} \bullet \\
& & \downarrow g_2 \\
& \dots & \\
& & \bullet \xleftarrow{r_n} \bullet \\
& \downarrow g_n & \\
\bullet & \xrightarrow{m} & \bullet
\end{array}$$

obtained by means of vertical and horizontal composition of Σ -squares. For instance, the following three diagrams

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
& & B & \xrightarrow{r} & I \\
& & \downarrow g & \Sigma & \downarrow g' \\
C & \xrightarrow{s} & J & \xrightarrow{r'} & \bullet \\
\downarrow h & & \downarrow \Sigma & & \downarrow h' \\
K & \xrightarrow{s'} & \bullet & & \bullet
\end{array}
\quad (1)$$

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
& & B & \xrightarrow{r} & I \\
& & \downarrow g & \Sigma & \downarrow g'' \\
C & \xrightarrow{s} & J & \xrightarrow{r''} & \bullet \\
\downarrow h & & \downarrow \Sigma & & \downarrow h'' \\
K & \xrightarrow{s''} & \bullet & \xrightarrow{r''} & \bullet
\end{array}
\quad (2)$$

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
& & B & \xrightarrow{r} & I \\
& & \downarrow g & \Sigma & \downarrow g' \\
C & \xrightarrow{s} & J & \xrightarrow{r'} & \bullet \\
\downarrow h & & \downarrow \Sigma & & \downarrow h'' \\
K & \xrightarrow{s''} & \bullet & \xrightarrow{r''} & \bullet
\end{array}
\quad (3)$$

are Σ -schemes. We say that $(r_1, g_1, r_2, g_2, \dots, r_n, g_n)$ is the **left border** of the Σ -scheme and (l, m) is the **right border**. A Σ -scheme with left border (r_1, \dots, g_n) is said to be of **level n** . A Σ -scheme of level 1 is just a Σ -square.

Let S be a Σ -scheme. Any Σ -square used in the formation of S is said to be a sub- Σ -square of S . Between all sub- Σ -squares of S , we are interested in those whose lower right vertex coincides with the lower right vertex of S , let us call them **replaceable Σ -squares** in S . For

instance, in (1) above, $\begin{array}{ccc} \xrightarrow{r's} & & \\ h \downarrow \Sigma & \downarrow h' & \\ \xrightarrow{s'} & & \end{array}$ is replaceable; in (2) $\begin{array}{ccc} \xrightarrow{r} & & \\ h'' g \downarrow \Sigma & \downarrow g'' & \\ \xrightarrow{r''} & & \end{array}$ is replaceable. In the

Σ -scheme of level 3

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \xrightarrow{r} \\
 \downarrow s \quad \downarrow g \quad \Sigma \quad \downarrow g' \\
 \xrightarrow{t} \quad \downarrow h \quad \Sigma \quad \downarrow h' \quad \Sigma \quad \downarrow h'' \\
 \downarrow k \quad \Sigma \quad \downarrow k' \quad \xrightarrow{s'} \quad \downarrow r'' \\
 \xrightarrow{t'} \quad \xrightarrow{s'} \quad \xrightarrow{r''}
 \end{array}
 \quad (3.14)$$

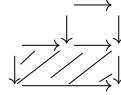
the Σ -squares $k'h \downarrow \Sigma \downarrow h''$ and $h'g \downarrow \Sigma \downarrow h''g'$ are replaceable.

A Σ -**step** from a Σ -scheme S_1 to a Σ -scheme S_2 with the same left border is a transformation of S_1 into S_2 which substitutes a replaceable Σ -square of S_1 by a Σ -square with the same left border, obtaining S_2 . We are going to indicate a Σ -step from S_1 to S_2 by a wavy arrow

$$S_1 \rightsquigarrow S_2.$$

For instance, the Σ -step from (1) to (3) above which replaces $h \downarrow \Sigma \downarrow h'$ by $h \downarrow \Sigma \downarrow h''$

takes a Σ -scheme of the type



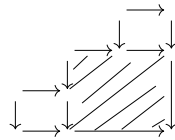
into another one of the same type, by replacing the Σ -square corresponding to the shaded area. Observe that, as required, the two Σ -squares involved, when seen as Σ -schemes, have the same left border, namely $(r's, h)$.

Another example: Consider the Σ -scheme of level 3

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \xrightarrow{r} \\
 \downarrow s \quad \downarrow g \quad \Sigma \quad \downarrow g' \\
 \xrightarrow{t} \quad \downarrow h \quad \Sigma \quad \downarrow h_1 \quad \Sigma \quad \downarrow h_2 \\
 \downarrow k \quad \Sigma \quad \downarrow k' \quad \Sigma \quad \downarrow k_1 \quad \Sigma \quad \downarrow k_2 \\
 \xrightarrow{t'} \quad \xrightarrow{s_2} \quad \xrightarrow{r_2}
 \end{array}
 \quad (3.15)$$

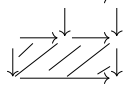
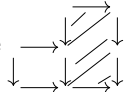
The Σ -step from the Σ -scheme (3.14) to the Σ -scheme (3.15) which replaces the Σ -square

$k'h \downarrow \Sigma \downarrow h''$ by $k'h \downarrow \Sigma \downarrow k_2h_2$ takes a Σ -scheme of the form



into another one of the same type by replacing the Σ -square corresponding to the shaded area.

A Σ -**path** between Σ -schemes with the same left border is a finite sequence of Σ -steps.

Concerning Σ -paths between Σ -schemes of level 2, we use the notations d and u to indicate the type of Σ -steps involved, where d (down) stands by the type  and u (upper) stands by the type .

We may for instance consider the following Σ -path from (1) to (2):

$$(1) \xrightarrow{d} (3) \xrightarrow{u} (2) . \quad (3.16)$$

3. Ω 2-cells. Associated to each Σ -step from a Σ -scheme S_1 with right border (l_1, m_1) to another Σ -scheme S_2 with right border (l_2, m_2) , we have a basic Ω 2-cell from the cospan (l_1, m_1) to the cospan (l_2, m_2) as described next.

Assume that the Σ -step replaces a Σ -square R_1 with right border (k_1, n_1) with a Σ -square R_2 with right border (k_2, n_2) such that $l_i = k_i l_o$ and $m_i = n_i m_o$, $i = 1, 2$, as illustrated below.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{a} \downarrow l_0 \\ \downarrow b \quad R_1 \quad \downarrow k_1 \\ \xrightarrow{m_0} \quad \quad \quad \xrightarrow{n_1} \end{array} & \rightsquigarrow & \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{a} \downarrow l_0 \\ \downarrow b \quad R_2 \quad \downarrow k_2 \\ \xrightarrow{m_0} \quad \quad \quad \xrightarrow{n_2} \end{array} \end{array}$$

Consider the basic 2-cell from (k_1, n_1) to (k_2, n_2) determined by the passage from R_1 to R_2 . Composing on the left and on the right with l_o and m_o , respectively, we obtain a basic Ω 2-cell from (l_1, m_1) to (l_2, m_2) .

For instance, consider the first Σ -step, of type d , in (3.16). First we take the basic Ω 2-cell

$$\Omega_1: (h', s') \Rightarrow (h''', r''' s'').$$

The part remaining unchanged in the right border of the Σ -scheme is just g' . Then we compose with g' , obtaining a (well-determined) basic Ω 2-cell

$$\Omega_1: (h' g', s') \Rightarrow (h''' g', r''' s'').$$

Analogously, for the second Σ -step of (3.16), of type u , we consider the basic Ω 2-cell

determined by the passage from $\begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{r} \\ h'' g' \downarrow \sum \downarrow h''' g' \\ \xrightarrow{r'''} \end{array}$ to $\begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{r} \\ h'' g' \downarrow \sum \downarrow g'' \\ \xrightarrow{r''} \end{array}$, obtaining

$$\Omega_2: (h''' g', r''') \Rightarrow (g'', r'');$$

then, composing with s'' , we have the resulting basic Ω 2-cell

$$\Omega_2: (h''' g', r''' s'') \Rightarrow (g'', r'' s'').$$

A Ω 2-cell is a finite vertical composition of basic Ω 2-cells, determined by Σ -steps between Σ -schemes with the same left border. For instance, the vertical composition $\Omega_2 \cdot \Omega_1$ of the two basic Ω 2-cells above gives an Ω 2-cell from $(h' g', s')$ to $(g'', r'' s'')$.

This way, to each Σ -path corresponds a Ω 2-cell given by the vertical composition of the basic Ω 2-cells corresponding to the Σ -steps of the Σ -path.

We say that two Σ -paths are **equivalent** if they give rise to the same Ω 2-cell.

4. Properties of Σ -paths. The Σ -schemes of level 3 will be of special interest in what follows.

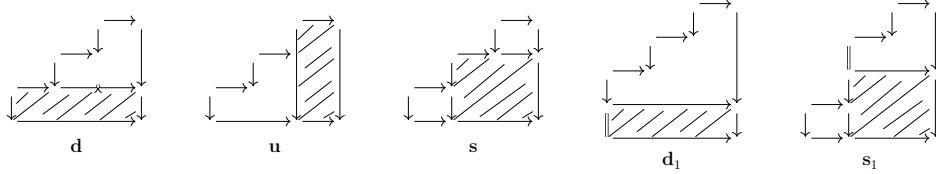
Observe that a Σ -scheme of level 2 can be looked as a Σ -scheme of level 3 by adding a bottom row made of identities:

$$\begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\quad} \\ \downarrow \\ \parallel \quad \parallel \end{array}$$

Therefore, all that we are going to conclude on Σ -schemes of level 3 has obvious consequences for Σ -schemes of level 2.

Remark 3.10. In what follows, we frequently write $\downarrow \Sigma \downarrow$ instead of $\downarrow \Sigma^\alpha \downarrow$ omitting the name of the invertible 2-cell of the Σ -square. Sometimes we will also use just numbered squares, as for instance in the proof of Lemma 3.12, to refer to Σ -squares.

Notation 3.11. Consider the following five types of Σ -schemes of level 3 with the same left border, that we identify by the letters below, namely, **d** (down), **u** (upper), **s** (square), **d₁** and **s₁**:



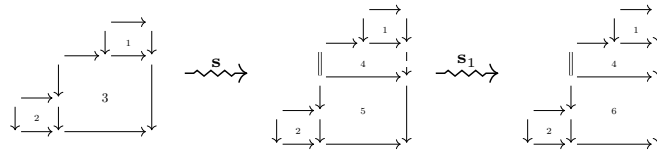
Between two Σ -schemes of type **d**, which agree on the non-shaded part and on the left border of the shaded part, we may perform a Σ -step by replacing just the shaded part with its left border. We then say that this Σ -step is also of type **d**. Analogously, we use the same terminology for the remaining four cases.

Lemma 3.12. *We have the following properties for Σ -paths between Σ -schemes of level 3:*

- (1) *A Σ -path of two Σ -steps of the same type is equivalent to the Σ -path consisting of just a Σ -step of that type.*
- (2) *A Σ -path consisting of two Σ -steps, one of the form **s**, the other of the form **s₁**, is equivalent to a Σ -step of the form **s**.*
- (3) *A Σ -path consisting of two Σ -steps, one of the form **d**, the other of the form **d₁**, is equivalent to a Σ -step of the form **d**.*
- (4) *Every two possible Σ -steps between two given Σ -schemes are equivalent. The basic Ω 2-cell corresponding to a Σ -step of any type from a Σ -scheme to itself is the identity 2-cell.*

Proof. (1) is clear from Lemma 3.9.

Concerning (2), given a Σ -path $S_1 \xrightarrow{\sim \mathbf{s}} S_3 \xrightarrow{\sim \mathbf{s}_1} S_2$, necessarily we have that S_1 is of the form **s**, S_2 is of the form **s₁**, and S_3 is of both forms; that is, the Σ -path is of the following form, where we use numbers to indicate the various Σ -squares involved:



But the application of Rule 4' to the squares $\downarrow \Sigma \downarrow$ and $\downarrow \Sigma \downarrow$, which leads to the basic Ω 2-cell corresponding to **s₁**, may be obtained by applying Rule 4' to the squares number 5 and 6 and then composing with square number 4. Consequently, under the present circumstances, **s₁** is equivalent to **s**, and the entire Σ -path is equivalent to the Σ -step of type **s**.

$$\begin{array}{c}
\rightarrow \\
\downarrow \\
\rightarrow \downarrow \\
\rightarrow \downarrow \\
\rightarrow \downarrow \\
\parallel \downarrow \\
\downarrow \rightarrow \downarrow \\
\downarrow \rightarrow \downarrow \\
\downarrow \rightarrow \downarrow
\end{array}
\quad (3.17)$$

Concerning (4), let, for instance, have two Σ -steps between two Σ -schemes, one of type **d**, the other one of type **u**. Then the two Σ -schemes must be simultaneously of type **d** and **u**, say

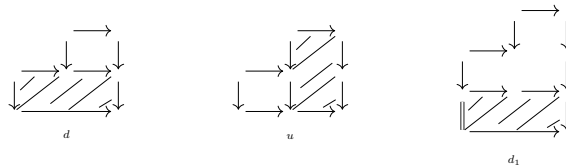


As we have just seen, all Σ -paths of length 1 between two given Σ -schemes are equivalent. We show in Proposition 3.14 that this is also true for Σ -paths of length 2. That is, every two Σ -paths of the form $S_1 \xrightarrow{i} S_3 \xrightarrow{j} S_2$ and $S_1 \xrightarrow{k} S_4 \xrightarrow{l} S_2$, where $i, j, k, l \in \{\mathbf{d}, \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{s}, \mathbf{d}_1, \mathbf{s}_1\}$, are equivalent. For Σ -paths of length greater than 2, see Remark 3.17 and Proposition 3.20.

The diagram illustrates a directed graph representing a Markov chain. The nodes are labeled $S_n, S_1, S_2, S_3, S_{k+1}, S_k, S_{n-1}$. The edges are labeled $i_n, i_1, i_2, i_{k-1}, i_k, i_{n-1}$. The graph shows a sequence of nodes $S_1, S_2, S_3, \dots, S_{k+1}, S_k, S_{n-1}, S_n, S_1$, forming a cycle. The edges represent transitions between these states.

Proposition 3.14. *Every two Σ -paths of length 2 between two given Σ -schemes of level 3 with the same left border are equivalent. Equivalently, any cycle as in Remark 3.13 of length 4 corresponds to an identity 2-cell in $\mathcal{X}[\Sigma_*]$.*

Notation 3.15. For Σ -steps between Σ -schemes of level 2, apart from the letters d and u , already mentioned, we use also the letter d_1 in the indication of the type of the Σ -step. To summarize, we use the following types:

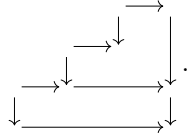


where, in each case, the shaded rectangle is the Σ -square replaced in the corresponding Σ -step.

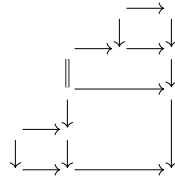
Corollary 3.16. *For Σ -schemes of level 2, S_1, S_2, S_3 and S_4 , we have that for $i, j, k, l \in \{d, u, d_1\}$, any two Σ -paths of the form $S_1 \xrightarrow{i} S_3 \xrightarrow{j} S_2$ and $S_1 \xrightarrow{k} S_4 \xrightarrow{l} S_2$ are equivalent.*

Remark 3.17. We believe that the property stated in 3.14 is true for Σ -paths of any finite length. Equivalently, any cycle as in Remark 3.13 of finite length corresponds to an identity 2-cell in $\mathcal{K}[\Sigma_*]$. Although we do not have a complete proof involving all possible Σ -paths, we have a proof of the property for Σ -paths that we call *of interest* and that we are going to define next. This is stated in Proposition 3.20. This result combined with Proposition 3.14 encompass all Σ -paths with a role along the paper.

Next we define Σ -paths of interest. A Σ -scheme S in which a Σ -step of type **d** may start (or end) is necessarily of type **d** (see Notation 3.11), that is, of the form



Analogously for the types **u**, **s**, **d₁** and **s₁**. Of course the Σ -schemes of one of these types may have different configurations. In the next table we consider some special configurations which are going to be of interest, each one with a name. For **s** and **s₁** we consider just one configuration of each one. Observe that the configuration of type **s₁** given by



is also of type **s**, thus we do not consider it in the row of **s₁**.

Type	General	Configurations of interest
d		<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; width: 100%;"> da db dc </div>
u		<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; width: 100%;"> ua ub </div>
s		<div style="text-align: center;">s</div>
s₁		<div style="text-align: center;">s₁</div>

Definition 3.18. A Σ -scheme of level 3 has a *configuration of interest* if it has one of the seven configurations indicated in the right-side column of the above table. If a Σ -scheme has a configuration of interest we say that it is a *Σ -scheme of interest*. A *Σ -path of interest* is a Σ -path consisting only of Σ -schemes of interest.

Remark 3.19. Of course, in a Σ -path of interest, every Σ -step is incident to two Σ -schemes with a same configuration which starts with the letter representing the type of the Σ -step.

Proposition 3.20. *Every two Σ -paths of interest starting and ending at the same Σ -schemes are equivalent.*

Proof. See Appendix A. □

The following property has also a role in what follows and is proven in Appendix A.

Proposition 3.21. *Let $A \xrightarrow{\bar{f}} B \xrightarrow{\bar{g}} C \xrightarrow{\bar{h}} D \xrightarrow{\bar{k}} E$ be Σ -cospans, where $\bar{f} = (f, r)$, $\bar{g} = (g, s)$, $\bar{h} = (h, t)$ and $\bar{k} = (k, u)$.*

*(1) Let $\Omega: (l_1g, m_1u) \Rightarrow (l_2g, m_2u)$ be a basic Ω 2-cell determined by a Σ -step of level 2 of the type **d** or **u** between two Σ -schemes of left border (s, h, t, k) and right border (l_i, m_i) , respectively. Then the 2-cell $\Omega \circ 1_{\bar{f}}$ is an Ω 2-cell corresponding to a Σ -path of interest of Σ -schemes of level 3 and left border (r, g, s, h, t, k) .*

*(2) Let $\Omega: (l_1f, m_1t) \rightarrow (l_2f, m_2t)$ be a basic Ω 2-cell determined by a Σ -step of level 2 of the type **d** or **u** between two Σ -schemes of left border (r, g, s, h) and right border (l_i, m_i) , respectively. Then the 2-cell $1_{\bar{k}} \circ \Omega$ is an Ω 2-cell corresponding to a Σ -path of interest of Σ -schemes of level 3 and left border (r, g, s, h, t, k) .*

Proof. See Appendix A. □

3.3 The horizontal composition and the associator

In the composition of Σ -cospans we are going to use prefixed Σ -squares, called canonical Σ -squares.

Definition 3.22. Canonical Σ -squares. Since Σ admits a left calculus of lax fractions, by Square, we know that for each span $I \xleftarrow{r} B \xrightarrow{g} J$ with $r \in \Sigma$, there is some Σ -cospan forming a Σ -square with it. In order to define the composition, we assume a pregiven map which assigns to each such a pair (r, g) a fixed Σ -square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} B & \xrightarrow{r} & I \\ g \downarrow & \Sigma^{\alpha} & \downarrow \dot{g} \\ J & \xrightarrow{\dot{r}} & \dot{B} \end{array}$$

called a *canonical Σ -square*. For $r: A \rightarrow B$ in Σ and any $f: A \rightarrow B$, we assume that we have

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{r} & B \\ 1_A \downarrow & \Sigma^{\text{id}} & \downarrow 1_B \\ A & \xrightarrow{r} & B \end{array} \quad \text{and} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{1_A} & A \\ f \downarrow & \Sigma^{\text{id}} & \downarrow f \\ B & \xrightarrow{1_A} & B \end{array}$$

as canonical Σ -squares. Sometimes the canonical Σ -squares will be indicated with just the symbol $\dot{\Sigma}$.

The *canonical Σ -scheme* of level 3 of a given left border, which sometimes we will denote by Can , is given by

$$\begin{array}{c} \longrightarrow \\ \longrightarrow \downarrow \dot{\Sigma} \downarrow \\ \longrightarrow \downarrow \dot{\Sigma} \downarrow \dot{\Sigma} \downarrow \\ \downarrow \dot{\Sigma} \downarrow \dot{\Sigma} \downarrow \dot{\Sigma} \downarrow \end{array}$$

and likewise for Σ -schemes of level 2.

Definition 3.23. (Horizontal) composition between Σ -cospans. Given Σ -cospans $(f, I, r): A \rightarrow B$ and $(g, J, s): B \rightarrow C$, its composition is the Σ -cospan $(\dot{g}f, \dot{B}, \dot{r}s): A \rightarrow C$, obtained by taking the canonical Σ -square of r and g :

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} A & \xrightarrow{f} & I & \xleftarrow{r} & B \\ & & \dot{g} \downarrow & \Sigma^\alpha & \downarrow g \\ & & \dot{B} & \xleftarrow{\dot{r}} & J & \xleftarrow{s} & C \end{array}$$

Definition 3.24. Horizontal composition of 2-cells. Given two horizontally composable 2-morphisms as in the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} A & \xrightarrow{f_1} & I_1 & \xleftarrow{r_1} & B & \xrightarrow{g_1} & J_1 & \xleftarrow{s_1} & C \\ \parallel & & \downarrow x_1 \Sigma^{\delta_1} & & \parallel & & \downarrow y_1 \Sigma^{\varepsilon_1} & & \parallel \\ & \searrow \alpha & X & \xleftarrow{x_3} & B & \searrow \beta & Y & \xleftarrow{y_3} & C \\ & & \uparrow x_2 \Sigma^{\delta_2} & & & & \uparrow y_2 \Sigma^{\varepsilon_2} & & \\ A & \xrightarrow{f_2} & I_2 & \xleftarrow{r_2} & B & \xrightarrow{g_2} & J_2 & \xleftarrow{s_2} & C \end{array} \quad (3.18)$$

use Rule 6 to obtain the following equality of pasting diagrams:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} B & \xrightarrow{x_3} & X \\ g_1 \downarrow & & \downarrow y_1 \Sigma^{\varepsilon_1} \\ J_1 & & Y \\ y_1 \downarrow & & \downarrow v \\ Y & \xrightarrow{v} & V \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c} \curvearrowright \\ \beta' \\ \curvearrowleft \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} B & \xrightarrow{x_3} & X \\ g_1 \downarrow & & \downarrow y_1 \Sigma^{\varepsilon_1} \\ J_1 & \xrightarrow{\beta} & J_2 \\ y_1 \downarrow & & \downarrow y_2 \Sigma^{\varepsilon_2} \\ Y & \xrightarrow{v} & V \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c} \curvearrowright \\ \beta' \\ \curvearrowleft \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} B & \xrightarrow{x_3} & X \\ g_2 \downarrow & & \downarrow y_2 \Sigma^{\varepsilon_2} \\ J_2 & & Y \\ y_2 \downarrow & & \downarrow v \\ Y & \xrightarrow{v} & V \end{array} \quad (3.19)$$

In this way, we get the following 2-morphism:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} A & \xrightarrow{f_1} & I_1 & \xrightarrow{x_1} & X & \xrightarrow{y_1'} & V & \xleftarrow{v} & Y & \xleftarrow{y_3} & C \\ \parallel & & \downarrow \alpha & & \parallel & & \downarrow \beta' & & \parallel & & \downarrow \Sigma^{\text{id}} \\ & & & & & & & & & & \\ A & \xrightarrow{f_2} & I_2 & \xrightarrow{x_2} & X & \xrightarrow{y_2'} & V & \xleftarrow{v} & Y & \xleftarrow{y_3} & C \end{array} \quad (3.20)$$

Consider the following Σ -path between Σ -schemes of level 2, where d and u refer to the type of the Σ -steps (see Notation 3.15):

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} B & \xrightarrow{r_i} & I_i & \xrightarrow{\quad} & B & \xrightarrow{r_i} & I_i & \xrightarrow{\quad} & B & \xrightarrow{r_i} & I_i \\ g_i \downarrow & \dot{\Sigma} & \downarrow \dot{g}_i & & g_i \downarrow & \dot{\Sigma} & \downarrow \dot{g}_i & & g_i \downarrow & \dot{\Sigma} & \downarrow \dot{g}_i \\ C & \xrightarrow{s_i} & J_i & \xrightarrow{\dot{r}_i} & \dot{B}_i & \xrightarrow{s_i} & J_i & \xrightarrow{\dot{r}_i} & \dot{B}_i & \xrightarrow{s_i} & J_i \\ \parallel & \dot{\Sigma} & \parallel & \dot{\Sigma} & \parallel & \Sigma^{\varepsilon_i} & \downarrow y_i & \dot{\Sigma} & \parallel & \Sigma^{\varepsilon_i} & \downarrow y_i \\ C & \xrightarrow{s_i} & J_i & \xrightarrow{\dot{r}_i} & \dot{B}_i & \xrightarrow{s_i} & J_i & \xrightarrow{\dot{r}_i} & \dot{B}_i & \xrightarrow{s_i} & J_i \\ & & & & & & & & & & \downarrow y_i \\ & & & & & & & & & & Y & \xrightarrow{v} & V \end{array} \quad \begin{array}{c} \curvearrowright d \curvearrowleft \\ \curvearrowright u \curvearrowleft \end{array} \quad (3.21)$$

Let $\Omega_i: (g_i, s_i) \circ (f_i, r_i) = (\dot{g}_i f_i, \dot{r}_i s_i) \implies (y_i' x_i f_i, v y_3)$ be the Ω 2-cell determined by that Σ -path, and obtain three vertically composable 2-cells

$$(g_1, s_1) \circ (f_1, r_1) \xrightarrow{\Omega_1} (y_1' x_1 f_1, v y_3) \xrightarrow{[\beta' \circ \alpha, 1_V, 1_V]} (y_2' x_2 f_2, v y_3) \xrightarrow{\Omega_2^{-1}} (g_2, s_2) \circ (f_2, r_2) .$$

The horizontal composition $[\beta, y_1, y_2] \circ [\alpha, x_1, x_2]$ is given by the vertical composition

$$\Omega_2^{-1} \cdot [\beta' \circ \alpha, 1_V, 1_V] \cdot \Omega_1 .$$

In Proposition 3.28 we show that the horizontal composition is well-defined — that is, Definition 3.24 does not depend on the choice of the Σ -squares and β^I in (3.19), and it respects the \approx -relation.

Definition 3.25. Composition. For every triple of objects A, B and C the map comp_{ABC} assigns to two Σ -cospans $A \xrightarrow{(f,r)} B \xrightarrow{(g,s)} C$ its composition $(g,s) \circ (f,r)$, and to two 2-cells $\bar{\alpha}: (f,r) \Rightarrow (f',r')$ and $\bar{\beta}: (g,s) \Rightarrow (g',s')$ its composition $\bar{\beta} \circ \bar{\alpha}: (g,s) \circ (f,r) \Rightarrow (g',s') \circ (f',r')$.

In Proposition 3.30 we will prove that comp_{ABC} is indeed a functor.

Definition 3.26. Associator. Let us be given three composable Σ -cospans:

$$A \xrightarrow{\bar{f}} B \xrightarrow{\bar{g}} C \xrightarrow{\bar{h}} D$$

with $\bar{f} = (f, I, r)$, $\bar{g} = (g, J, s)$ and $\bar{h} = (h, K, t)$. We consider the Σ -schemes of level 2 as below, where all Σ -squares are canonical and the middle Σ -scheme is the canonical one.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \begin{array}{ccccc} & & \bullet & \xrightarrow{r} & \bullet \\ & & \downarrow g & & \downarrow \\ \bullet & \xrightarrow{s} & \bullet & & \bullet \\ \downarrow h & \downarrow \Sigma & \downarrow & & \downarrow \\ \bullet & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \bullet & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \bullet \end{array} & \begin{array}{ccccc} & & \bullet & \xrightarrow{r} & \bullet \\ & & \downarrow g & \downarrow \Sigma & \downarrow \\ \bullet & \xrightarrow{s} & \bullet & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \bullet \\ \downarrow h & \downarrow \Sigma & \downarrow & \downarrow \Sigma & \downarrow \\ \bullet & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \bullet & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \bullet \end{array} & \begin{array}{ccccc} & & \bullet & \xrightarrow{r} & \bullet \\ & & \downarrow g & \downarrow \Sigma & \downarrow \\ \bullet & \xrightarrow{s} & \bullet & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \bullet \\ \downarrow h & \downarrow \Sigma & \downarrow & \downarrow & \downarrow \\ \bullet & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \bullet & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \bullet \end{array} \\ (1) & (2) & (3) \end{array}$$

The right borders of the Σ -schemes (1) and (3), after performing the composition with f on the left and with t on the right, give the compositions $((h,t) \circ (g,s)) \circ (f,r)$ and $(h,t) \circ ((g,s) \circ (f,r))$, respectively.

The associator, given componentwise by

$$\text{Assoc}_{\bar{f}, \bar{g}, \bar{h}}: ((h,t) \circ (g,s)) \circ (f,r) \Rightarrow (h,t) \circ ((g,s) \circ (f,r)) ,$$

is the Ω 2-cell corresponding to the Σ -path $(1) \rightsquigarrow^{\mathbf{u}} (2) \rightsquigarrow^{\mathbf{d}} (3)$.

In Proposition 3.31 we will prove that the associator, as defined above, form indeed a natural isomorphism from $- \circ (- \circ -)$ to $(- \circ -) \circ -$.

Definition 3.27. Unitors. Taking into account Definition 3.23 and the Identity rule of the calculus of lax fractions (see Definition 2.1), the identity 1-cells act indeed as identities concerning the horizontal composition. Thus, we define the **left unitor** and the **right unitor** to be given simply by identity 2-cells.

Proposition 3.28. *The horizontal composition is well-defined.*

Proof. (1) First we observe that, up to the \approx -relation, the horizontal composition does not depend on the choice of the Σ -squares and the 2-cell β^I of (3.19). Indeed, let us have the equality of pasting diagrams

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \begin{array}{ccccc} B & \xrightarrow{x_3} & X & & \\ g_1 \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\ J_1 & \xrightarrow{\Sigma^{\xi_1}} & \bar{y}_1 & \xrightarrow{\bar{\beta}} & \bar{y}_2 \\ y_1 \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\ Y & \xrightarrow{\bar{v}} & \bar{V} & & \end{array} & = & \begin{array}{ccccc} B & \xrightarrow{x_3} & X & & \\ g_1 \downarrow & & \downarrow g_2 & & \\ J_1 & \xrightarrow{\beta} & J_2 & \xrightarrow{\Sigma^{\xi_2}} & \bar{y}_2 \\ y_1 \downarrow & & \downarrow y_2 & & \\ Y & \xrightarrow{\bar{v}} & \bar{V} & & \end{array} \end{array} \quad (3.22)$$

leading to the 2-morphism $(\bar{\beta} \circ \alpha, 1_{\bar{V}}, 1_{\bar{V}}): (\bar{y}_1 x_1 f_1, \bar{v} y_3) \Rightarrow (\bar{y}_2 x_2 f_2, \bar{v} y_3)$. Using Rule 4 of Proposition 2.8, there are $Q \xrightarrow{p} T \xleftarrow{\bar{p}} \bar{Q}$, Σ -squares Σ^χ and $\Sigma^{\bar{\chi}}$, and invertible 2-cells θ_i , such that

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \begin{array}{c}
 B \xrightarrow{x_3} X \\
 y_1 g_1 \downarrow \quad \Sigma^{\xi_1} \quad \downarrow y_1' \\
 Y \cdots \xrightarrow{v} V \xrightarrow{\theta_1} \bar{V} \\
 \parallel \quad \Sigma^\chi \quad \downarrow p \\
 Y \xrightarrow{t} T \xleftarrow{\bar{p}} \bar{V} \\
 \parallel \quad \Sigma^\chi \quad \uparrow p \\
 Y \cdots \xrightarrow{v} V \xrightarrow{\theta_2} \bar{V} \\
 y_2 g_2 \uparrow \quad \Sigma^{\xi_2} \quad \uparrow y_2' \\
 B \xrightarrow{x_3} X
 \end{array}
 & = &
 \begin{array}{c}
 B \xrightarrow{x_3} X \\
 y_1 g_1 \downarrow \quad \Sigma^{\bar{\xi}_1} \quad \downarrow \bar{y}_1 \\
 Y \cdots \xrightarrow{\bar{v}} \bar{V} \\
 \parallel \quad \Sigma^{\bar{\chi}} \quad \downarrow \bar{p} \\
 Y \xrightarrow{t} T \\
 \parallel \quad \Sigma^{\bar{\chi}} \quad \uparrow \bar{p} \\
 Y \cdots \xrightarrow{\bar{v}} \bar{V} \\
 y_2 g_2 \uparrow \quad \Sigma^{\bar{\xi}_2} \quad \uparrow \bar{y}_2 \\
 B \xrightarrow{x_3} X
 \end{array}
 \end{array} \quad (3.23)$$

Using the equalities (3.19), (3.22) and (3.23), we see that the pasting of the Σ -square

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 B & \xrightarrow{x_3} & X \\
 y_1 g_1 \downarrow & \Sigma^{\bar{\chi} \circ \xi_1} & \downarrow \bar{p} \bar{y}_1 \\
 Y & \xrightarrow{t} & T
 \end{array}$$

with $\theta_2 \cdot (p \circ \beta') \cdot \theta_1^{-1}$ is equal to its pasting with $\bar{p} \circ \bar{\beta}$. Using Equification, we obtain a Σ -square

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 Y & \xrightarrow{t} & T \\
 \parallel & \Sigma^\psi & \downarrow q \\
 Y & \xrightarrow{u} & Q
 \end{array}$$

such that $q \circ (\theta_2 \cdot (p \circ \beta') \cdot \theta_1^{-1}) = q \circ \bar{p} \circ \bar{\beta}$. Consider the following diagram representing three vertically composable 2-morphisms:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 A & \xrightarrow{f_1} & I_1 & \xrightarrow{x_1} & X & \xrightarrow{\bar{y}_1} & \bar{V} \xleftarrow{\bar{v}} Y \xleftarrow{y_3} C \\
 \parallel & & \parallel & & \parallel & \swarrow q\theta_1^{-1} & \downarrow \Sigma^{\psi \circ \bar{\chi}} \parallel \Sigma^{\text{id}} \parallel \\
 & & & & & Q & \xleftarrow{u} Y \xleftarrow{y_3} C \\
 & & & & & \nwarrow qp & \uparrow \Sigma^{\psi \circ \chi} \parallel \Sigma^{\text{id}} \parallel \\
 A & \xrightarrow{f_1} & I_1 & \xrightarrow{x_1} & X & \xrightarrow{y_1'} & V \xleftarrow{v} Y \xleftarrow{y_3} C \\
 \parallel & & \parallel & & \parallel & & \parallel \Sigma^{\text{id}} \parallel \\
 & & \searrow \alpha & & \searrow \beta' & & V \xleftarrow{v} Y \xleftarrow{y_3} C \\
 & & & & & & \parallel \Sigma^{\text{id}} \parallel \\
 A & \xrightarrow{f_2} & I_2 & \xrightarrow{x_2} & X & \xrightarrow{y_2'} & V \xleftarrow{v} Y \xleftarrow{y_3} C \\
 \parallel & & \parallel & & \parallel & \swarrow q\theta_2 & \downarrow \Sigma^{\psi \circ \chi} \parallel \Sigma^{\text{id}} \parallel \\
 & & & & & Q & \xleftarrow{u} Y \xleftarrow{y_3} C \\
 & & & & & \nwarrow qp & \uparrow \Sigma^{\psi \circ \bar{\chi}} \parallel \Sigma^{\text{id}} \parallel \\
 A & \xrightarrow{f_2} & I_2 & \xrightarrow{x_2} & X & \xrightarrow{\bar{y}_2} & \bar{V} \xleftarrow{\bar{v}} Y \xleftarrow{y_3} C
 \end{array}$$

The top and the bottom 2-morphisms of this diagram are of type Ω ; more precisely,

$$\tilde{\Omega}_i = [q\theta_i x_i f_i, qp, q\bar{p}]: (\bar{y}_i x_i f_i, \bar{v} y_3) \Longrightarrow (y_i' x_i f_i, v y_3)$$

corresponds to the Σ -step

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 B & \xrightarrow{r_i} & I_i \\
 g_i \downarrow & & \downarrow y'_i x_i \\
 C & \xrightarrow{s_i} & J_i \quad \Sigma^{\xi_i \odot \delta_i} \\
 \parallel \quad \Sigma^{\varepsilon_i} \downarrow y_i & & \downarrow y_i x_i \\
 C & \xrightarrow{y_3} & Y \xrightarrow{v} V
 \end{array}
 \xrightarrow{u}
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 B & \xrightarrow{r_i} & I_i \\
 g_i \downarrow & & \downarrow \bar{y}_i x_i \\
 C & \xrightarrow{s_i} & J_i \quad \Sigma^{\xi_i \odot \delta_i} \\
 \parallel \quad \Sigma^{\varepsilon_i} \downarrow y_i & & \downarrow y_i x_i \\
 C & \xrightarrow{y_3} & Y \xrightarrow{\bar{v}} \bar{V}
 \end{array}
 .$$

Adding this Σ -step to the Σ -path (3.21), and taking into account Lemma 3.12(1), we obtain a Σ -path of the form $\bullet \xrightarrow{d} \bullet \xrightarrow{u} \bullet$ which determines, for $i = 1, 2$, the Ω 2-cells

$$\bar{\Omega}_i: (g_i, s_i) \circ (f_i, r_i) \Longrightarrow (\bar{y}_i x_i f_i, \bar{v} y_3)$$

required in Definition 3.24.

Then,

$$\begin{aligned}
 \bar{\Omega}_2^{-1} \cdot [\bar{\beta} \circ \alpha, \text{id}, \text{id}] \cdot \bar{\Omega}_1 &= \bar{\Omega}_2^{-1} \cdot [(q \circ \theta_2 \circ x_2 f_2) \cdot (qp \circ \beta' \circ \alpha) \cdot (q \circ \theta_1^{-1} \circ x_1 f_1), q\bar{p}, q\bar{p}] \cdot \bar{\Omega}_1 \\
 &= \bar{\Omega}_2^{-1} \cdot [q \circ \theta_2 \circ x_2 f_2, qp, q\bar{p}] \cdot [qp \circ \beta' \circ \alpha, qp, qp] \cdot [((q \circ \theta_1^{-1} \circ x_1 f_1), q\bar{p}, qp)] \cdot \bar{\Omega}_1 \\
 &= \bar{\Omega}_2^{-1} \cdot \bar{\Omega}_2^{-1} \cdot [\beta' \circ \alpha, 1_V, 1_V] \cdot \bar{\Omega}_1 \cdot \bar{\Omega}_1 \\
 &= \bar{\Omega}_2^{-1} \cdot [\beta' \circ \alpha, 1_V, 1_V] \cdot \bar{\Omega}_1
 \end{aligned}$$

as desired.

(2) Secondly, we show that this composition respects the \approx -relation. That is, given $(\hat{\alpha}, \hat{x}_1, \hat{x}_2) \approx (\alpha, x_1, x_2): (f_1, r_1): A \rightarrow B$ and $(\hat{\beta}, \hat{y}_1, \hat{y}_2) \approx (\beta, y_1, y_2): (g_1, s_1) \Rightarrow (g_2, s_2): B \rightarrow C$, it holds $(\hat{\beta}, \hat{y}_1, \hat{y}_2) \circ (\hat{\alpha}, \hat{x}_1, \hat{x}_2) \approx (\beta, y_1, y_2) \circ (\alpha, x_1, x_2)$. It is enough to consider the following two special cases:

(2a) $(\hat{\alpha}, \hat{x}_1, \hat{x}_2)$ is a Σ -extension of (α, x_1, x_2) and $(\beta, y_1, y_2) = (\hat{\beta}, \hat{y}_1, \hat{y}_2)$;

(2b) $(\hat{\beta}, \hat{y}_1, \hat{y}_2)$ is a Σ -extension of (β, y_1, y_2) and $(\hat{\alpha}, \hat{x}_1, \hat{x}_2) = (\alpha, x_1, x_2)$.

(2a) In the first case, let $(\hat{\alpha}, \hat{x}_1, \hat{x}_2)$ be a Σ -extension of (α, x_1, x_2) by means of the following equality:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 A & \xrightarrow{f_1} & I_1 \xleftarrow{r_1} B \\
 \downarrow d \circ \alpha & & \downarrow \theta_1^{-1} \\
 X & \xleftarrow{\theta_1^{-1}} & \hat{x}_1 \xleftarrow{\theta_1} X \xleftarrow{x_3} B \\
 \downarrow d & & \downarrow d \\
 D & \xleftarrow{u} & B \\
 \downarrow d & & \downarrow d \\
 X & \xrightarrow{\theta_2} & \hat{x}_2 \xleftarrow{\theta_2} X \xleftarrow{x_3} B \\
 \downarrow x_2 & & \downarrow x_2 \\
 A & \xrightarrow{f_2} & I_2 \xleftarrow{r_2} B
 \end{array}
 =
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 A & \xrightarrow{f_1} & I_1 \xleftarrow{r_1} B \\
 \downarrow \hat{\alpha} & & \downarrow \hat{x}_1 \\
 \hat{D} & \xleftarrow{u} & B \\
 \downarrow \hat{x}_2 & & \downarrow \hat{x}_2 \\
 A & \xrightarrow{f_2} & I_2 \xleftarrow{r_2} B
 \end{array}$$

In order to get $(\beta, y_1, y_2) \circ (\hat{\alpha}, \hat{x}_1, \hat{x}_2)$, we apply Rule 6:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 B & \xrightarrow{u} & D \\
 g_1 \downarrow & & \downarrow g_2 \\
 J_1 & \xrightarrow{\Sigma^{\xi'_1}} & J_2 \quad \Sigma^{\xi'_2} \\
 y_1 \downarrow & & \downarrow y_2 \\
 Y & \xrightarrow{v} & V
 \end{array}
 \xrightarrow{y_1'' \beta''}
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 B & \xrightarrow{u} & D \\
 g_1 \downarrow & & \downarrow g_2 \\
 J_1 & \xrightarrow{\beta} & J_2 \quad \Sigma^{\xi'_2} \\
 y_1 \downarrow & & \downarrow y_2 \\
 Y & \xrightarrow{v} & V
 \end{array}
 .$$

By considering

$$y'_i = y_i'' d, \quad \xi_i = \xi_i' \odot \varphi \quad (i = 1, 2), \quad \text{and} \quad \beta' = \beta'' \circ d$$

we obtain the data to define $[\beta, y_1, y_2] \circ [\alpha, x_1, x_2]$, see (3.19). Let

$$\begin{aligned} \Omega_i &: (g_i, s_i) \circ (f_i, r_i) \Rightarrow (y_i' x_i f_i, v y_3), \text{ and} \\ \hat{\Omega}_i &: (g_i, s_i) \circ (f_i, r_i) \Rightarrow (y_i'' \hat{x}_i f_i, v y_3), \end{aligned}$$

be the Ω 2-cells obtained as in Definition 3.24 to arrive at $[\beta, y_1, y_2] \circ [\hat{\alpha}, \hat{x}_1, \hat{x}_2]$ and $[\beta, y_1, y_2] \circ [\alpha, x_1, x_2]$, respectively; in particular, $\hat{\Omega}_i$ is the Ω 2-cell corresponding to the Σ -path

$$\begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{r_i} \\ \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{s_i} \downarrow g_i \downarrow \Sigma \downarrow \\ \parallel \xrightarrow{\Sigma^{\text{id}}} \parallel \end{array} \xrightarrow{d} \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{r_i} \\ \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{s_i} \downarrow g_i \downarrow \Sigma \downarrow \\ \parallel \xrightarrow{\Sigma y_i} \parallel \end{array} \end{array} \xrightarrow{u} \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{r_i} \\ \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{s_i} \downarrow g_i \downarrow \Sigma \downarrow \\ \parallel \xrightarrow{\Sigma y_i} \parallel \end{array} \end{array} \xrightarrow{y_i'' \hat{x}_i} \cdot \quad (3.24) \end{array}$$

Observe that $\tilde{\Omega}_i = [y_i'' \circ \theta_i \circ f_i, 1, 1]$ is a basic Ω 2-cell produced by a Σ -step of type u . Hence, using Lemma 3.12(1), we see that $\tilde{\Omega}_i \cdot \hat{\Omega}_i = \Omega_i$.

Consider the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} A & \xrightarrow{f_1} & I_1 & \xrightarrow{\quad \dot{g}_1 \quad} & \dot{B}_1 & \xleftarrow{\dot{r}_1} & J_1 \xleftarrow{s_1} C \\ \parallel & & & & \downarrow \hat{\Omega}_1 & & \parallel \\ A & \xrightarrow{f_1} & I_1 & \xrightarrow{x_1} X \xrightarrow{d} D \xrightarrow{y_1''} V \xleftarrow{v} Y \xleftarrow{y_3} C \\ & \searrow d \circ \alpha & & \parallel & \parallel & \parallel & \parallel \\ & & & & \beta'' & & \Sigma^{\text{id}} \\ & & & & & & \parallel \\ A & \xrightarrow{f_2} & I_2 & \xrightarrow{x_2} X \xrightarrow{d} D \xrightarrow{y_2''} V \xleftarrow{v} Y \xleftarrow{y_3} C \\ & \searrow & & \parallel & \parallel & \parallel & \parallel \\ & & & & \hat{\Omega}_2^{-1} & & \parallel \\ A & \xrightarrow{f_2} & I_2 & \xrightarrow{\quad \dot{g}_2 \quad} & \dot{B}_2 & \xleftarrow{\dot{r}_2} & J_2 \xleftarrow{s_2} C \end{array} \quad .$$

We then obtain:

$$\begin{aligned} [(\beta, y_1, y_2) \circ (\hat{\alpha}, \hat{x}_1, \hat{x}_2)] &= \hat{\Omega}_2^{-1} \cdot [\beta'' \circ \hat{\alpha}, 1_V, 1_V] \cdot \hat{\Omega}_1 \\ &= \hat{\Omega}_2^{-1} \cdot [\beta'' \circ ((\theta_2 \circ f_2) \cdot (d \circ \alpha) \cdot (\theta_1^{-1} \circ f_1)), 1_V, 1_V] \cdot \hat{\Omega}_1 \\ &= \hat{\Omega}_2^{-1} \cdot \tilde{\Omega}_2^{-1} \cdot [\beta' \circ \alpha, 1_V, 1_V] \cdot \tilde{\Omega}_1 \cdot \hat{\Omega}_1 \\ &= \Omega_2^{-1} \cdot [\beta' \circ \alpha, 1_V, 1_V] \cdot \Omega_1 \\ &= [(\beta, y_1, y_2) \circ (\alpha, x_1, x_2)] \end{aligned}$$

as desired.

(2b) For the second case, let $(\hat{\beta}, \hat{y}_1, \hat{y}_2)$ be a Σ -extension of (β, y_1, y_2) through the following

equalities, where the 2-cells θ_i are invertible:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\begin{array}{c} C \xrightarrow{s_1} J_1 \\ \parallel \quad \Sigma^{\varepsilon_1} \downarrow y_1 \\ C \xrightarrow{y_3} Y \Rightarrow_{\theta_1} \hat{Y} \\ \parallel \quad \Sigma^\lambda \downarrow d \\ C \xrightarrow{\hat{y}_3} \hat{Y} \\ \parallel \quad \Sigma^\lambda \uparrow d \\ C \xrightarrow{y_3} Y \Rightarrow_{\theta_2} \hat{Y} \\ \parallel \quad \Sigma^{\varepsilon_2} \uparrow y_2 \\ C \xrightarrow{s_2} J_2 \end{array} & = & \begin{array}{c} C \xrightarrow{s_1} J_1 \\ \parallel \quad \Sigma^{\varepsilon_1} \downarrow \hat{y}_1 \\ C \xrightarrow{\hat{y}_3} \hat{Y} \\ \parallel \quad \Sigma^{\varepsilon_2} \uparrow \hat{y}_2 \\ C \xrightarrow{s_2} J_2 \end{array} ; \hat{\beta} = (\theta_2 \circ g_2) \cdot (d \circ \beta) \cdot (\theta_1^{-1} \circ g_1). \quad (3.25)
\end{array}$$

Consider the Σ -squares Σ^{ξ_i} of (3.19) of the definition of horizontal composition of (α, x_1, x_2) with (β, y_1, y_2) , and use Square and the 2-cells θ_i to get

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
& & B & \xrightarrow{x_3} & X \\
& \swarrow g_i & \downarrow y_i g_i & \downarrow \Sigma^{\xi_i} & \downarrow y_i' \\
J_1 & \xrightarrow{\theta_i^{-1} \circ g_i} & Y & \xrightarrow{v} & V \\
& \searrow \hat{y}_i & \downarrow d & \downarrow \Sigma^\mu & \downarrow d' \\
& & \hat{Y} & \xrightarrow{u} & Q
\end{array}$$

By Horizontal Repletion, we have the Σ -square

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
B & \xlongequal{\quad} & B \\
\hat{y}_i g_i \downarrow & \Sigma^{\theta_i^{-1} g_i} & \downarrow d y_i g_i \\
\hat{Y} & \xlongequal{\quad} & \hat{Y}
\end{array}$$

Put

$$\nu_i = (\theta_i^{-1} g_i) \oplus (\mu \odot \xi_i), \quad y_i'' = d' y_i' \text{ and } \beta'' = d' \circ \beta'.$$

It is easy to see that

$$\hat{y}_1 g_1 \left(\begin{array}{ccc} B & \xrightarrow{x_3} & X \\ \downarrow \hat{y}_2 g_2 & \downarrow \Sigma^{\nu_2} & \downarrow y_2'' \\ \hat{Y} & \xrightarrow{u} & Q \end{array} \right) \hat{\beta} \hat{y}_2'' = \hat{y}_1 g_1 \left(\begin{array}{ccc} B & \xrightarrow{x_3} & X \\ \downarrow \hat{y}_1 g_1 & \downarrow \Sigma^{\nu_1} & \downarrow y_1'' \\ \hat{Y} & \xrightarrow{u} & Q \end{array} \right) \hat{\beta}'' \hat{y}_2'' .$$

Therefore, we may take the Σ -squares Σ^{ν_i} and the 2-cell β'' to perform the conditions corresponding to (3.19) in the process of obtaining the horizontal composition of (α, x_1, x_2) with $(\hat{\beta}, \hat{x}_1, \hat{x}_2)$. In this way, we get the 2-morphism in the middle of diagram (3.27) below. This diagram illustrates the desired \approx -equivalence. Indeed, as in Definition 3.24, consider

$$\Omega_i \cdot (g_i, s_i) \circ (f_i, r_i) \xlongequal{\quad} (y_i' x_i f_i, v y_3)$$

and

$$\hat{\Omega}_i \cdot (g_i, s_i) \circ (f_i, r_i) \xlongequal{\quad} (d' y_i' x_i f_i, u \hat{y}_3)$$

corresponding to the compositions $[\beta, y_1, y_2] \circ [\alpha, x_1, x_2]$ and $[\hat{\beta}, \hat{y}_1, \hat{y}_2] \circ [\alpha, x_1, x_2]$, respectively. Moreover, let

$$\tilde{\Omega}_i \cdot (y_i' x_i f_i, v y_3) \xlongequal{\quad} (d' y_i' x_i f_i, u \hat{y}_3)$$

be the basic Ω 2-cell corresponding to the following Σ -step of type d_1 (see Notation 3.15):

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 & \xrightarrow{r_i} & \\
 \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{s_i} \downarrow g_i \\ \Sigma \end{array} & \xrightarrow{d_1} & \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{s_i} \downarrow g_i \\ \Sigma \end{array} \\
 \parallel \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{y_3} \downarrow y_i \\ \Sigma \end{array} & \xrightarrow{y_i' x_i} & \parallel \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{y_3} \downarrow y_i \\ \Sigma \end{array} \\
 & \xrightarrow{v} & \\
 & \xrightarrow{d'} & \\
 \parallel \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\hat{y}_3} \downarrow d \\ \Sigma \end{array} & \xrightarrow{u} & \parallel \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\hat{y}_3} \downarrow d \\ \Sigma \end{array}
 \end{array}$$

Recall that Ω_i is given by the Σ -step (3.21) as in Definition 3.24. Comparing $\tilde{\Omega}_i \circ \Omega_i$ and $\hat{\Omega}_i$, which have the same domain and codomain, we see that, on one hand, $\tilde{\Omega}_i \circ \Omega_i$ corresponds to a Σ -path of the form $\bullet \xrightarrow{d} \bullet \xrightarrow{u} \bullet \xrightarrow{d_1} \bullet$, as in the top line of diagram (3.26) below, and, on the other hand, $\hat{\Omega}_i$ is obtained by a Σ -path of the form $\bullet \xrightarrow{d} \bullet \xrightarrow{u} \bullet$. See (3.24), as in the bottom of diagram (3.26), starting with the same Σ -step $\bullet \xrightarrow{d} \bullet$ as the one for $\tilde{\Omega}_i \circ \Omega_i$.

$$\bullet \xrightarrow{d} \bullet \xrightarrow{u} \bullet \xrightarrow{d_1} \bullet \quad (3.26)$$

By Lemma 3.12, we have the equivalence of Σ -paths indicated in the diagram. Thus, $\tilde{\Omega}_i \circ \Omega_i = \hat{\Omega}_i$.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \tilde{\Omega}_1: \\
 \begin{array}{ccccc}
 A & \xrightarrow{(g_1, s_1) \circ (f_1, r_1)} & C \\
 \parallel & \searrow \Omega_1 & \parallel \\
 A & \xrightarrow{y_1' x_1 f_1} V \xleftarrow{v} Y \xleftarrow{y_3} C \\
 \parallel & \swarrow d' \downarrow \Sigma^\mu & \parallel \\
 A & \xrightarrow{d' y_1' x_1 f_1} Q \xleftarrow{u} \hat{Y} \xleftarrow{\hat{y}_3} C \\
 \parallel & \downarrow (d' \circ \beta) \circ \alpha & \parallel \\
 A & \xrightarrow{d' y_2' x_2 f_2} Q \xleftarrow{u} \hat{Y} \xleftarrow{\hat{y}_3} C \\
 \parallel & \swarrow d' \uparrow \Sigma^\mu & \parallel \\
 A & \xrightarrow{y_2' x_2 f_2} V \xleftarrow{v} Y \xleftarrow{y_3} C \\
 \parallel & \searrow \Omega_2^{-1} & \parallel \\
 A & \xrightarrow{(g_2, s_2) \circ (f_2, r_2)} & C
 \end{array}
 \end{array}
 \quad (3.27)$$

We obtain:

$$\begin{aligned}
 [(\beta, y_1, y_2) \circ (\alpha, x_1, x_2)] &= \Omega_2^{-1} \cdot [\beta' \circ \alpha, 1_V, 1_V] \cdot \Omega_1, \quad \text{see Definition 3.24} \\
 &= \Omega_2^{-1} \cdot (\tilde{\Omega}_2^{-1} \cdot [(d' \circ \beta') \circ \alpha, 1_Q, 1_Q] \cdot \tilde{\Omega}_1) \cdot \Omega_1, \\
 &= (\Omega_2^{-1} \cdot \tilde{\Omega}_2^{-1}) \cdot [(d' \circ \beta') \circ \alpha, 1_Q, 1_Q] \cdot (\tilde{\Omega}_1 \cdot \Omega_1), \quad \text{by the associativity of the vertical composition} \\
 &= \hat{\Omega}_2^{-1} \cdot [(d' \circ \beta') \circ \alpha, 1_Q, 1_Q] \cdot \hat{\Omega}_1, \\
 &= [(\hat{\beta}, \hat{y}_1, \hat{y}_2) \circ (\alpha, x_1, x_2)].
 \end{aligned}$$

□

The following remark will be useful in the proof of the next proposition.

Lemma 3.29. Assume we are given the data

$$\begin{array}{c} h_1 \\ \swarrow \quad \downarrow \gamma_1 \\ J \xleftarrow{h_p} B \xrightarrow{r} I \\ \nwarrow \quad \downarrow \gamma_2 \\ h_3 \end{array}$$

with $r \in \Sigma$. Then there are

$$\begin{array}{c} B \xrightarrow{r} I \\ h_i \downarrow \quad \Sigma^{\xi_i} \downarrow h'_i \\ J \xrightarrow{v} V \end{array} \quad (i=1,2,3) \quad \text{and} \quad h'_i \left(\begin{array}{c} I \\ \xrightarrow{\gamma'_i} \\ V \end{array} \right) h'_{i+1} \quad (i=1,2)$$

such that

$$h_i \left(\begin{array}{c} B \xrightarrow{r} I \\ \xrightarrow{\gamma_i} \downarrow h \Sigma^{\xi_{i+1}} \downarrow h'_{i+1} \\ J \xrightarrow{v} V \end{array} \right) = h_i \downarrow \Sigma^{\xi_i} \downarrow h'_i \left(\begin{array}{c} I \\ \xrightarrow{\gamma'_i} \\ V \end{array} \right) h'_{i+1} \quad (i=1,2) \quad (3.28)$$

Proof. Rule 6 of Proposition 2.8 tells us that this is true for just one 2-cell γ_1 . Thus, we have equalities of the form

$$h_1 \left(\begin{array}{c} B \xrightarrow{r} I \\ \xrightarrow{\gamma_1} \downarrow h_2 \Sigma^{\sigma_2} \downarrow \tilde{h}_2 \\ J \xrightarrow{v_1} V_1 \end{array} \right) = h_1 \downarrow \Sigma^{\sigma_1} \downarrow \tilde{h}_1 \left(\begin{array}{c} I \\ \xrightarrow{\tilde{\gamma}_1} \\ V_1 \end{array} \right) \tilde{h}_2 \quad \text{and} \quad h_2 \left(\begin{array}{c} B \xrightarrow{r} I \\ \xrightarrow{\gamma_2} \downarrow \Sigma^{\mu_3} \downarrow \hat{h}_3 \\ J \xrightarrow{v_2} V_2 \end{array} \right) = h_2 \downarrow \Sigma^{\mu_2} \downarrow \hat{h}_2 \left(\begin{array}{c} I \\ \xrightarrow{\hat{\gamma}_2} \\ V_2 \end{array} \right) \hat{h}_3.$$

Using Rule 4', we obtain the equality

$$\begin{array}{ccc} B \xrightarrow{r} I & \xrightarrow{\hat{h}_2} & B \xrightarrow{r} I \\ h_2 \downarrow \quad \Sigma^{\sigma_2} \downarrow \tilde{h}_2 & & h_2 \downarrow \quad \Sigma^{\mu_2} \downarrow \hat{h}_2 \\ J \xrightarrow{v_1} V_1 \xrightarrow{\rho} V_2 & = & J \xrightarrow{v_2} V_2 \\ \parallel \quad \Sigma^{\omega_1} \downarrow w_1 & & \parallel \quad \Sigma^{\omega_2} \downarrow w_2 \\ J \xrightarrow{v} V & & J \xrightarrow{v} V \end{array}$$

where ρ is invertible.

Put:

$$h'_1 = w_1 \tilde{h}_1; \quad h'_2 = w_2 \hat{h}_2; \quad h'_3 = w_2 \hat{h}_3;$$

$$\gamma'_1 = \rho \cdot (w_1 \tilde{\gamma}_1); \quad \gamma'_2 = w_2 \hat{\gamma}_2;$$

$$\Sigma^{\xi_1} = \Sigma^{\omega_1 \odot \sigma_1}; \quad \Sigma^{\xi_2} = \Sigma^{(\omega_1 \odot \sigma_2) \oplus \rho}; \quad \Sigma^{\xi_3} = \Sigma^{\omega_2 \odot \mu_3}.$$

It is easy to see that this way we obtain the desired result. \square

Proposition 3.30. $\text{comp}_{ABC}: \mathcal{X}[\Sigma_*](A, B) \times \mathcal{X}[\Sigma_*](B, C) \rightarrow \mathcal{X}[\Sigma_*](A, C)$ is a functor.

Proof. The equality $\text{id}_g \circ \text{id}_f = \text{id}_{g \circ f}$ is clear: observe that in the application of (3.19), for $\beta = \text{id}_g$, we may put $\beta^i = \text{id}_g$ using the canonical Σ -square of r and g .

Now, given 1-cells $\bar{f}_i = (f_i, r_i)$ and $\bar{g}_i = (g_i, s_i)$, and 2-cells

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & \bar{f}_1 & & \bar{g}_1 & \\ & \downarrow \bar{\alpha}_1 & & \downarrow \bar{\beta}_1 & \\ A & \xrightarrow{f_2} & B & \xrightarrow{g_2} & C \\ & \downarrow \bar{\alpha}_2 & & \downarrow \bar{\beta}_2 & \\ & \bar{f}_3 & & \bar{g}_3 & \end{array}$$

we want to show that

$$(\bar{\beta}_2 \cdot \bar{\beta}_1) \circ (\bar{\alpha}_2 \cdot \bar{\alpha}_1) = (\bar{\beta}_2 \circ \bar{\alpha}_2) \cdot (\bar{\beta}_1 \circ \bar{\alpha}_1). \quad (3.29)$$

First we show that, for $A \xrightarrow{\bar{f}} B \xrightarrow{\bar{g}} C$, we always have

$$(\bar{g} \circ \bar{\alpha}_2) \cdot (\bar{g} \circ \bar{\alpha}_1) = \bar{g} \circ (\bar{\alpha}_2 \cdot \bar{\alpha}_1) \quad \text{and} \quad (\bar{\beta}_2 \circ \bar{f}) \cdot (\bar{\beta}_1 \circ \bar{f}) = (\bar{\beta}_2 \cdot \bar{\beta}_1) \circ \bar{f}. \quad (3.30)$$

After that, to obtain (3.29), it is enough to prove the whiskering law — that is, that, given two 2-cells $\bar{\alpha}$ and $\bar{\beta}$ of the form

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} A & \xrightarrow{\bar{f}_1} & B & \xrightarrow{\bar{g}_1} & C \\ & \Downarrow \bar{\alpha} & & \Downarrow \bar{\beta} & \\ A & \xrightarrow{\bar{f}_2} & B & \xrightarrow{\bar{g}_2} & C \end{array}$$

the equalities

$$(\bar{\beta} \circ \bar{f}_2) \cdot (\bar{g}_1 \circ \bar{\alpha}) = \bar{\beta} \circ \bar{\alpha} = (\bar{g}_2 \circ \bar{\alpha}) \cdot (\bar{\beta} \circ \bar{f}_1) \quad (3.31)$$

hold.

(1) In order to show the first equality of (3.30), suppose we have $\bar{f}_i = (f_i, I_i, r_i): A \rightarrow B$, $i = 1, 2, 3$, $\bar{\alpha}_i = [\alpha_i, x_{i1}, x_{i2}, x_{i3}, \delta_{i1}, \delta_{i2}]: \bar{f}_i \Rightarrow \bar{f}_{i+1}$, and $\bar{g} = (g, J, s)$.

Consider the following existing data:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \begin{array}{c} B \xrightarrow{r_2} I_2 \\ \parallel \sum^{\delta_{12}} \downarrow x_{12} \\ B \xrightarrow{x_{13}} X_1 \xrightarrow{\theta} X_2 \\ \parallel \sum^{\delta_1} \downarrow d_1 \\ B \xrightarrow{d} D \end{array} & \xrightarrow{x_{21}} & \begin{array}{c} B \xrightarrow{r_2} I_2 \\ \parallel \sum^{\delta_{21}} \downarrow x_{21} \\ B \xrightarrow{x_{23}} X_2 \\ \parallel \sum^{\delta_2} \downarrow d_2 \\ B \xrightarrow{d} D \end{array} \\ & = & \begin{array}{c} B \xrightarrow{r_2} I_2 \\ \parallel \sum^{\delta_{21}} \downarrow x_{21} \\ B \xrightarrow{x_{23}} X_2 \\ \parallel \sum^{\delta_2} \downarrow d_2 \\ B \xrightarrow{d} D \end{array} \end{array} ; \quad \begin{array}{ccc} B & \xrightarrow{d} & D \\ g \downarrow & \sum^{\sigma} & \downarrow g' \\ J & \xrightarrow{d'} & D' \end{array}. \quad (3.32)$$

Then $\bar{\alpha}_2 \cdot \bar{\alpha}_1 = [(d_2 \circ \alpha_2) \cdot (\theta \circ f_2) \cdot (d_1 \circ \alpha_1), d_1 x_{11}, d_2 x_{22}, d, \delta_1 \odot \delta_{11}, \delta_2 \odot \delta_{22}]$, and $\bar{g} \circ (\bar{\alpha}_2 \cdot \bar{\alpha}_1)$ is represented by the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} A & \xrightarrow{\quad} & & \xrightarrow{\bar{g} \circ \bar{f}_1} & & & C \\ \parallel & & & \Downarrow \Omega_1 & & & \parallel \\ A & \xrightarrow{f_1} I_1 \xrightarrow{x_{11}} X_1 & \xrightarrow{d_1} & D & \xrightarrow{g'} D' & \xleftarrow{d'} J & \xleftarrow{s} C \\ \parallel & \searrow \alpha_1 & \parallel & \parallel & \parallel & \parallel & \parallel \\ A & \xrightarrow{f_2} I_2 \xrightarrow{x_{12}} X_1 & \xrightarrow{d_1} & D & \parallel & \parallel & \parallel \\ \parallel & \parallel & \parallel & \parallel & \parallel & \parallel & \parallel \\ A & \xrightarrow{f_2} I_2 \xrightarrow{x_{21}} X_2 & \xrightarrow{d_2} & D & \parallel & \parallel & \parallel \\ \parallel & \searrow \alpha_2 & \parallel & \parallel & \parallel & \parallel & \parallel \\ A & \xrightarrow{f_3} I_3 \xrightarrow{x_{22}} X_2 & \xrightarrow{d_2} & D & \xrightarrow{g'} D' & \xleftarrow{d'} J & \xleftarrow{s} C \\ \parallel & \parallel & \parallel & \parallel & \parallel & \parallel & \parallel \\ A & \xrightarrow{\quad} & & \xrightarrow{\bar{g} \circ \bar{f}_3} & & & C \end{array} \quad (3.33)$$

where $\Omega_i: \bar{g} \circ \bar{f}_i \Rightarrow (g^! d_1 x_{1i} f_i, d^! s)$ is the Ω 2-cell corresponding just to the Σ -path

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & \xrightarrow{r_i} & \\ s \downarrow & \sum & \downarrow \dot{g}_i \\ & \dot{r}_i & \end{array} \xrightarrow{u} \begin{array}{ccc} & \xrightarrow{r_i} & \\ s \downarrow & \sum & \downarrow g^! d_1 x_{1i} \\ & d^! & \end{array}$$

and, similarly, $\bar{\Omega}_i: \bar{g} \circ \bar{f}_{i+1} \Rightarrow (g^! d_2 x_{2i} f_{i+1}, d^! s)$ corresponds to

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & \xrightarrow{r_{i+1}} & \\ s \downarrow & \sum & \downarrow \dot{g}_{i+1} \\ & \dot{r}_{i+1} & \end{array} \xrightarrow{u} \begin{array}{ccc} & \xrightarrow{r_{i+1}} & \\ s \downarrow & \sum & \downarrow g^! d_2 x_{2i} \\ & d^! & \end{array}.$$

Using again (3.32), the horizontal compositions $\bar{g} \circ \bar{\alpha}_1$ is represented by

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} A & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \bar{g} \circ \bar{f}_1 & \xrightarrow{\quad} & C \\ \parallel & & \downarrow \Omega_1 & & \parallel \\ A & \xrightarrow{f_1} I_1 \xrightarrow{x_{11}} X_1 & \xrightarrow{d_1} D & \xrightarrow{g^!} D' \xleftarrow{d'} J \xleftarrow{s} C \\ \parallel & \swarrow \alpha_1 & \parallel & \downarrow \Sigma^{\text{id}} & \parallel \\ A & \xrightarrow{f_2} I_2 \xrightarrow{x_{12}} X_1 & \xrightarrow{d_1} D & \xrightarrow{g^!} D' \xleftarrow{d's} C \\ \parallel & \downarrow \Omega_2^{-1} & \parallel & & \parallel \\ A & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \bar{g} \circ \bar{f}_2 & \xrightarrow{\quad} & C \end{array} \quad (3.34)$$

An analogous diagram represents the composition $\bar{g} \circ \bar{\alpha}_2$. Moreover the 2-cell $[g^! \circ \theta \circ f_2, 1_{D'}, 1_{D'}]$ is just the Ω 2-cell corresponding to the Σ -path

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & \xrightarrow{r_2} & \\ s \downarrow & \sum & \downarrow g^! d_1 x_{12} \\ & d^! & \end{array} \xrightarrow{u} \begin{array}{ccc} & \xrightarrow{r_2} & \\ s \downarrow & \sum & \downarrow g^! d_2 x_{21} \\ & d^! & \end{array}$$

Then, by Lemma 3.12, $[g^! \circ \theta \circ f_2, 1_{D'}, 1_{D'}] \circ \Omega_2 = \bar{\Omega}_1$.

Thus, we have:

$$\begin{aligned} \bar{g} \circ (\bar{\alpha}_2 \cdot \bar{\alpha}_1) &= \bar{\Omega}_2^{-1} \cdot [g^! \circ ((d_2 \circ \alpha_2) \cdot (\theta \circ f_2) \cdot (d_1 \circ \alpha_1)), 1_{D'}, 1_{D'}] \cdot \Omega_1 \\ &= \bar{\Omega}_2^{-1} \cdot [g^! d_2 \circ \alpha_2, 1_{D'}, 1_{D'}] \cdot [g^! \circ \theta \circ f_2, 1_{D'}, 1_{D'}] \cdot [g^! d_1 \circ \alpha_1, 1_{D'}, 1_{D'}] \cdot \Omega_1 \\ &= \bar{\Omega}_2^{-1} \cdot [g^! d_2 \circ \alpha_2, 1_{D'}, 1_{D'}] \cdot ([g^! \circ \theta \circ f_2, 1_{D'}, 1_{D'}] \cdot \Omega_2) \cdot (\bar{\Omega}_2^{-1} \cdot [g^! d_1 \circ \alpha_1, 1_{D'}, 1_{D'}] \cdot \Omega_1) \\ &= (\bar{\Omega}_2^{-1} \cdot [g^! d_2 \circ \alpha_2, 1_{D'}, 1_{D'}] \cdot \bar{\Omega}_1) \cdot (\bar{\Omega}_2^{-1} \cdot [g^! d_1 \circ \alpha_1, 1_{D'}, 1_{D'}] \cdot \Omega_1) \\ &= (\bar{g} \circ \bar{\alpha}_2) \cdot (\bar{g} \circ \bar{\alpha}_1) \end{aligned}$$

(2) In order to show the second equality of (3.30), let us have $\bar{f} = (f, I, r): A \rightarrow B$, $\bar{g}_i = (g_i, J_i, s_i): B \rightarrow C$ and $\bar{\beta}_i = [\beta_i, y_{i1}, y_{i2}, y_{i3}, \varepsilon_{i1}, \varepsilon_{i2}]: \bar{g}_i \Rightarrow \bar{g}_{i+1}$. Use Rule 4' to form the equality

$$\begin{array}{ccc} C & \xrightarrow{s_2} J_2 & \\ \parallel & \sum^{\varepsilon_{12}} \downarrow y_{12} & \searrow y_{21} \\ C & \xrightarrow{y_{13}} Y_1 \xrightarrow{\theta} Y_2 & \\ \parallel & \sum^{\delta_1} \downarrow d_1 & \swarrow d_2 \\ C & \xrightarrow{d} D & \end{array} = \begin{array}{ccc} C & \xrightarrow{s_2} J_2 & \\ \parallel & \sum^{\varepsilon_{21}} \downarrow y_{21} & \\ C & \xrightarrow{y_{23}} Y_2 & \\ \parallel & \sum^{\delta_2} \downarrow d_2 & \\ C & \xrightarrow{d} D & \end{array}.$$

We can use this data to obtain Σ -extensions of $(\beta_1, y_{11}, y_{12})$ and $(\beta_2, y_{21}, y_{22})$; more precisely, we have that

$$\bar{\beta}_1 = [(\theta \circ g_2) \cdot (d_1 \circ \beta_1), d_1 y_{11}, d_2 y_{21}, d, \delta_1 \circ \varepsilon_{11}, \delta_2 \circ \varepsilon_{21}] \quad \text{and} \quad \bar{\beta}_2 = [d_2 \circ \beta_2, d_2 y_{21}, d_2 y_{22}, d, \delta_2 \circ \varepsilon_{21}, \delta_2 \circ \varepsilon_{22}].$$

We form $\bar{\beta}_i \circ \bar{f}$, for $i = 1, 2$, using these last \approx -representatives. For that, apply the result of Lemma 3.29, with $\gamma_1 = (\theta \circ g_2) \cdot (d_1 \circ \beta_1)$ and $\gamma_2 = d_2 \circ \beta_2$,

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & B & & \\
 & g_1 \swarrow & \downarrow g_2 & \searrow g_3 & \\
 J_1 & \xrightarrow{\gamma_1} & J_2 & \xrightarrow{\gamma_2} & J_3 \\
 & \searrow d_1 y_{11} & \downarrow d_2 y_{21} & \swarrow d_2 y_{22} & \\
 & & D & &
 \end{array}$$

to obtain a situation as in Equation (3.28), with $h_1 = d_1 y_{11} g_1$, $h_2 = d_2 y_{21} g_2$ and $h_3 = d_2 y_{22} g_3$,

Then, we may represent the 2-cells $(\bar{\beta}_i \circ \bar{f})$ of $\mathcal{X}[\Sigma_*]$ by the following diagram, where Ω_i and Ω_{i+1} are the due 2-cells of type Ω , according to Definition 3.24:

$$\begin{array}{c}
 A \xrightarrow{\quad \bar{g}_i \circ \bar{f} \quad} C \\
 \parallel \qquad \qquad \qquad \downarrow \Omega_i \qquad \qquad \qquad \parallel \\
 A \xrightarrow{f} I \xrightarrow{h'_i} V \xleftarrow{v} D \xleftarrow{d} C \\
 \parallel \quad \parallel \quad \parallel \quad \downarrow \gamma'_i \quad \parallel \quad \parallel \quad \parallel \\
 A \xrightarrow{f} I \xrightarrow{h'_{i+1}} V \xleftarrow{v} D \xleftarrow{d} C \\
 \parallel \qquad \qquad \qquad \downarrow \Omega_{i+1}^{-1} \qquad \qquad \qquad \parallel \\
 A \xrightarrow{\quad \bar{g}_{i+1} \circ \bar{f} \quad} C
 \end{array}$$

Observing that $\bar{\beta}_2 \cdot \bar{\beta}_1 = [\gamma_2 \cdot \gamma_1, d_1 y_{11}, d_2 y_{22}]$, and that we have

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 B \xrightarrow{r} I & & B \xrightarrow{r} I \\
 \left(\begin{array}{c} \gamma_1' \\ \downarrow \\ \gamma_2' \end{array} \right) \downarrow \Sigma^{\epsilon_3} & \downarrow h'_3 & \downarrow \Sigma^{\epsilon_1} \left(\begin{array}{c} \gamma_1' \\ \downarrow \\ \gamma_2' \end{array} \right) \\
 D \xrightarrow{v} V & & D \xrightarrow{v} V
 \end{array}$$

we obtain:

$$\begin{aligned}
 (\bar{\beta}_2 \circ \bar{f}) \cdot (\bar{\beta}_1 \circ \bar{f}) &= (\Omega_3^{-1} \cdot [\gamma'_2 \circ f, 1_V, 1_V] \cdot \Omega_2) \cdot (\Omega_2^{-1} \cdot [\gamma'_1 \circ f, 1_V, 1_V] \cdot \Omega_1) \\
 &= \Omega_3^{-1} \cdot [\gamma'_2 \circ f, 1_V, 1_V] \cdot [\gamma'_1 \circ f, 1_V, 1_V] \cdot \Omega_1 \\
 &= \Omega_3^{-1} \cdot [(\gamma'_2 \cdot \gamma'_1) \circ f, 1_V, 1_V] \cdot \Omega_1 \\
 &= (\bar{\beta}_2 \cdot \bar{\beta}_1) \circ \bar{f}.
 \end{aligned}$$

(3) Concerning (3.31), let us consider two 2-cells $\bar{\alpha} = [\alpha, x_1, x_2]$ and $\bar{\beta} = [\beta, y_1, y_2]$ represented in the following diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 A & \xrightarrow{f_1} & I_1 & \xleftarrow{r_1} & B & \xrightarrow{g_1} & J_1 & \xleftarrow{s_1} & C \\
 \parallel & & \downarrow x_1 \Sigma^{\delta_1} & & \parallel & & \downarrow y_1 \Sigma^{\epsilon_1} & & \parallel \\
 & \searrow \alpha & X & \xleftarrow{x_3} & B & \searrow \beta & Y & \xleftarrow{y_3} & C \\
 & & \uparrow x_2 \Sigma^{\delta_2} & & & & \uparrow y_2 \Sigma^{\epsilon_2} & & \\
 A & \xrightarrow{f_2} & I_2 & \xleftarrow{r_2} & B & \xrightarrow{g_2} & J_2 & \xleftarrow{s_2} & C
 \end{array} \tag{3.35}$$

We want to show that

$$(\bar{\beta} \circ \bar{f}_2) \cdot (\bar{g}_1 \circ \bar{\alpha}) = \bar{\beta} \circ \bar{\alpha} = (\bar{g}_2 \circ \bar{\alpha}) \cdot (\bar{\beta} \circ \bar{f}_1). \tag{3.36}$$

Consider the following data, used in the composition $\bar{\beta} \circ \bar{\alpha}$ (see (3.19)).

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
B & \xrightarrow{x_3} & X \\
g_1 \downarrow & & \downarrow y_1' \\
J_1 & \xrightarrow{\Sigma^{\xi_1}} & J_2 \\
y_1 \downarrow & & \downarrow y_2 \\
Y & \xrightarrow{v} & V
\end{array}
=
\begin{array}{ccc}
B & \xrightarrow{x_3} & X \\
g_1 \downarrow & & \downarrow y_1' \\
J_1 & \xrightarrow{\beta} & J_2 \\
y_1 \downarrow & & \downarrow y_2 \\
Y & \xrightarrow{v} & V
\end{array}
\quad (3.37)$$

We prove the first equality of (3.36). First observe that $\bar{\beta} \circ \bar{f}_2 = \Omega_2^{-1} \cdot [\beta' \circ x_2 f_2, 1, 1] \cdot \Omega'$, where $\Omega_i: \bar{g}_i \circ \bar{f}_i \Rightarrow (y_i' x_i f_i, v y_3)$ and $\Omega': \bar{g}_1 \circ \bar{f}_2 \Rightarrow (y_1' x_2 f_2, v y_3)$ are the due 2-cells of type Ω , see diagram (3.38) below.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
A & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \bar{g}_1 \circ \bar{f}_2 & \xrightarrow{\quad} & C \\
\parallel & & \downarrow \Omega' & & \parallel \\
A & \xrightarrow{f_2} I_2 \xrightarrow{x_2} X & \xrightarrow{y_1'} V \xleftarrow{v} Y \xleftarrow{y_3} C & & \\
\parallel & \swarrow \parallel & \swarrow \parallel & \parallel & \parallel \\
A & \xrightarrow{f_2} I_2 \xrightarrow{x_2} V_0 & \xrightarrow{y_1'} V \xleftarrow{v} Y \xleftarrow{y_3} C & & \\
\parallel & & \downarrow \Omega_2^{-1} & & \parallel \\
A & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \bar{g}_2 \circ \bar{f}_2 & \xrightarrow{\quad} & C
\end{array}
\quad (3.38)$$

Moreover, taking into account that $(\text{id}_{g_1}, 1_{J_1}, 1_{J_1}, s_1, \text{id}, \text{id}) \approx (\text{id}_{y_1 g_1}, y_1, y_1, y_3, \varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_1)$, the composition $\bar{g}_1 \circ \bar{\alpha}$ may be represented by

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
A & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \bar{g}_1 \circ \bar{f}_1 & \xrightarrow{\quad} & C \\
\parallel & & \downarrow \Omega_1 & & \parallel \\
A & \xrightarrow{f_1} I_1 \xrightarrow{x_1} X & \xrightarrow{y_1'} V \xleftarrow{v} Y \xleftarrow{y_3} C & & \\
\parallel & \swarrow \alpha & \swarrow \parallel & \parallel & \parallel \\
A & \xrightarrow{f_2} I_1 \xrightarrow{x_2} X & \xrightarrow{y_1'} V \xleftarrow{v} Y \xleftarrow{y_3} C & & \\
\parallel & & \downarrow \Omega'^{-1} & & \parallel \\
A & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \bar{g}_1 \circ \bar{f}_2 & \xrightarrow{\quad} & C
\end{array}
\quad (3.39)$$

Composing vertically (3.39) with (3.38), we immediately see that the resulting 2-morphism is indeed a representative of the composition $\bar{\beta} \circ \bar{\alpha}$, that is, $(\bar{\beta} \circ \bar{f}_2) \cdot (\bar{g}_1 \circ \bar{\alpha}) \approx \bar{\beta} \circ \bar{\alpha}$.

The proof of the second equality of (3.36) is analogous. \square

Proposition 3.31. *The isomorphisms of Definition 3.26 indeed form a natural transformation from $- \circ (- \circ -)$ to $(- \circ -) \circ -$.*

Proof. We want to show that, for 2-cells

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
& \bar{f}_1 & & \bar{g}_1 & \\
A & \xrightarrow{\quad} & B & \xrightarrow{\quad} & C \\
& \bar{f}_2 & & \bar{g}_2 & \\
& \bar{h}_1 & & \bar{h}_2 & \\
D & \xrightarrow{\quad} & & &
\end{array}$$

in $\mathcal{K}[\Sigma_*]$ the following diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
(\bar{h}_1 \circ \bar{g}_1) \circ \bar{f}_1 & \xrightarrow{\text{Assoc } \bar{f}_1, \bar{g}_1, \bar{h}_1} & \bar{h}_1 \circ (\bar{g}_1 \circ \bar{f}_1) \\
(\bar{\gamma} \circ \bar{\beta}) \circ \bar{\alpha} \parallel & & \parallel \bar{\gamma} \circ (\bar{\beta} \circ \bar{\alpha}) \\
(\bar{h}_2 \circ \bar{g}_2) \circ \bar{f}_2 & \xrightarrow{\text{Assoc } \bar{f}_2, \bar{g}_2, \bar{h}_2} & \bar{h}_2 \circ (\bar{g}_2 \circ \bar{f}_2)
\end{array}
\quad (3.40)$$

is commutative in $\mathcal{X}[\Sigma_*](A, D)$.

We are given

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 A & \xrightarrow{f_1} & I_1 & \xleftarrow{r_1} & B & \xrightarrow{g_1} & J_1 & \xleftarrow{s_1} & C & \xrightarrow{h_1} & K_1 & \xleftarrow{t_1} & D \\
 \parallel & \searrow \alpha & \downarrow x_1 \Sigma^{\delta_1} & \parallel & \searrow \beta & \downarrow y_1 \Sigma^{\epsilon_1} & \parallel & \searrow \gamma & \downarrow z_1 \Sigma^{\zeta_1} & \parallel & \searrow & \downarrow & \parallel \\
 A & \xrightarrow{f_2} & I_2 & \xleftarrow{r_2} & B & \xrightarrow{g_2} & J_2 & \xleftarrow{s_2} & C & \xrightarrow{h_2} & K_2 & \xleftarrow{t_2} & D \\
 \parallel & \nearrow & \uparrow x_2 \Sigma^{\delta_2} & \parallel & \nearrow & \uparrow y_2 \Sigma^{\epsilon_2} & \parallel & \nearrow & \uparrow z_2 \Sigma^{\zeta_2} & \parallel & \nearrow & \uparrow & \parallel \\
 A & \xrightarrow{f_2} & I_2 & \xleftarrow{r_2} & B & \xrightarrow{g_2} & J_2 & \xleftarrow{s_2} & C & \xrightarrow{h_2} & K_2 & \xleftarrow{t_2} & D
 \end{array}$$

(a) Formation of $\bar{\beta} \circ \bar{\alpha}$:

We apply Rule 6 to obtain

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 B & \xrightarrow{x_3} & X \\
 g_1 \downarrow & & \downarrow g_2 \\
 J_1 & \xrightarrow{\Sigma^{\epsilon_1}} & J_2 \\
 y_1 \downarrow & & \downarrow y_2 \\
 Y & \xrightarrow{v} & V
 \end{array}
 \begin{array}{c}
 \nearrow \beta' \\
 \searrow y_2'
 \end{array}
 =
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 B & \xrightarrow{x_3} & X \\
 g_1 \downarrow & & \downarrow g_2 \\
 J_1 & \xrightarrow{\beta} & J_2 \\
 y_1 \downarrow & & \downarrow y_2 \\
 Y & \xrightarrow{v} & V
 \end{array}
 \begin{array}{c}
 \nearrow \beta' \\
 \searrow y_2'
 \end{array}
 \quad (3.41)$$

and we get the following 2-morphism

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 A & \xrightarrow{f_1} & I_1 & \xrightarrow{x_1} & X & \xrightarrow{y_1'} & V & \xleftarrow{v} & Y & \xleftarrow{y_3} & C \\
 \parallel & \searrow \alpha & \parallel & \searrow \beta' & \parallel & \parallel & \parallel & \parallel & \parallel & \parallel & \parallel \\
 A & \xrightarrow{f_2} & I_2 & \xrightarrow{x_2} & X & \xrightarrow{y_2'} & V & \xleftarrow{v} & Y & \xleftarrow{y_3} & C
 \end{array}$$

Now, consider the Σ -path

$$(\Omega_i) \quad \begin{array}{ccc}
 B & \xrightarrow{r_i} & I_i \\
 g_i \downarrow & \Sigma^{\dot{\alpha}_i} & \downarrow \dot{g}_i \\
 C & \xrightarrow{s_i} & J_i & \xrightarrow{\dot{r}_i} & \dot{B}_i \\
 \parallel & \Sigma^{\text{id}} & \parallel & \Sigma^{\text{id}} & \parallel \\
 C & \xrightarrow{s_i} & J_i & \xrightarrow{\dot{r}_i} & \dot{B}_i
 \end{array}
 \xrightarrow{d}
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 B & \xrightarrow{r_i} & I_i \\
 g_i \downarrow & \Sigma^{\dot{\alpha}_i} & \downarrow \dot{g}_i \\
 C & \xrightarrow{s_i} & J_i & \xrightarrow{\dot{r}_i} & \dot{B}_i \\
 \parallel & \Sigma^{\epsilon_i} & \parallel & \Sigma^{\epsilon_i} & \parallel \\
 C & \xrightarrow{s_i} & J_i & \xrightarrow{\dot{r}_i} & \dot{B}_i
 \end{array}
 \xrightarrow{u}
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 B & \xrightarrow{r_i} & I_i \\
 g_i \downarrow & \Sigma^{\epsilon_i \oplus \delta_i} & \downarrow y_i' x_i \\
 C & \xrightarrow{s_i} & J_i & \xrightarrow{\dot{r}_i} & \dot{B}_i \\
 \parallel & \Sigma^{\epsilon_i} & \parallel & \Sigma^{\epsilon_i} & \parallel \\
 C & \xrightarrow{s_i} & J_i & \xrightarrow{\dot{r}_i} & \dot{B}_i
 \end{array}
 \quad (3.42)$$

and let

$$\Omega_i: (\dot{g}_i f_i, \dot{r}_i s_i) \Rightarrow (y_i' x_i f_i, v y_i) \quad (i = 1, 2)$$

be the corresponding Ω 2-cell. Thus, according to Definition 3.24, $\bar{\beta} \circ \bar{\alpha}$ is given by

$$\bar{g}_1 \circ \bar{f}_1 = (\dot{g}_1 f_1, \dot{r}_1 s_1) \xRightarrow{\Omega_1} (y_1' x_1 f_1, v y_1) \xRightarrow{[\beta' \circ \alpha, 1_V, 1_V]} (y_2' x_2 f_2, v y_2) \xRightarrow{\Omega_2^{-1}} (\dot{g}_2 f_2, \dot{r}_2 s_2) = \bar{g}_2 \circ \bar{f}_2.$$

(b) Formation of $\bar{\gamma} \circ (\bar{\beta} \circ \bar{\alpha})$ and $(\bar{\gamma} \circ \bar{\beta}) \circ \bar{\alpha}$:

First use Rule 6 to find

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 C & \xrightarrow{y_3} & Y \\
 z_1 h_1 \searrow & & \downarrow z_2' \\
 Z & \xrightarrow{v_1} & V_1
 \end{array}
 \begin{array}{c}
 \nearrow \gamma \\
 \searrow z_2'
 \end{array}
 =
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 C & \xrightarrow{y_3} & Y \\
 z_1 \downarrow & \Sigma^{\mu_1} & \downarrow z_2' \\
 Z & \xrightarrow{v_1} & V_1
 \end{array}
 \begin{array}{c}
 \nearrow \gamma' \\
 \searrow z_2'
 \end{array}
 \quad (3.43)$$

and, subsequently, also

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 Y & \xrightarrow{v} & V \\
 z_1' \searrow & & \downarrow z_2'' \\
 V_1 & \xrightarrow{v_2} & V_2
 \end{array}
 \begin{array}{c}
 \nearrow \gamma' \\
 \searrow z_2''
 \end{array}
 =
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 Y & \xrightarrow{v} & V \\
 z_1' \downarrow & \Sigma^{\mu_1} & \downarrow z_2'' \\
 V_1 & \xrightarrow{v_2} & V_2
 \end{array}
 \begin{array}{c}
 \nearrow \gamma'' \\
 \searrow z_2''
 \end{array}
 \quad (3.44)$$

In order to obtain $[\gamma' \circ \beta, 1_{V_1}, 1_{V_1}] \circ \bar{\alpha}$, we are going to use Equation (3.41) and Equation (3.43), more precisely, the fact that we have:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 B & \xrightarrow{x_3} & X \\
 g_1 \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 J_1 & \xrightarrow{\Sigma^{\epsilon_1}} & J_2 \\
 y_1 \downarrow & & \downarrow y_2 \\
 Y & \xrightarrow{v} & V \\
 z_1' \downarrow & & \downarrow z_2'' \\
 V_1 & \xrightarrow{v_2} & V_2
 \end{array}
 \begin{array}{c}
 \xrightarrow{\beta'} \\
 \xrightarrow{\gamma''}
 \end{array}
 =
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 B & \xrightarrow{x_3} & X \\
 g_1 \downarrow & & \downarrow g_2 \\
 J_1 & \xrightarrow{\beta} & J_2 \\
 y_1 \downarrow & & \downarrow y_2 \\
 Y & \xrightarrow{v} & V \\
 z_1' \downarrow & & \downarrow z_2'' \\
 V_1 & \xrightarrow{v_2} & V_2
 \end{array}
 \begin{array}{c}
 \xrightarrow{\beta'} \\
 \xrightarrow{\gamma''}
 \end{array}$$

Indeed, we obtain again the 2-morphism $(\gamma'' \circ \beta' \circ \alpha, 1_{V_2}, 1_{V_2})$, already appearing in Equation (3.46), more precisely, we have that

$$[\gamma' \circ \beta, 1_{V_1}, 1_{V_1}] \circ \bar{\alpha} = \Omega_{32}^{-1} \cdot [\gamma'' \circ \beta' \circ \alpha, 1_{V_2}, 1_{V_2}] \cdot \Omega_{31}$$

where

$$\Omega_{3i} : (z_i' y_i g_i, v_1 z_3) \circ \bar{f}_i = (z_i f_i, \dot{r}_{3i} v_1 z_3) \Rightarrow (z_i'' y_i x_i f_i, v_2 v_1 z_3)$$

is the basic Ω 2-cell determined by the Σ -step below:

$$(\Omega_{3i}) \quad \begin{array}{ccc}
 B & \xrightarrow{r_i} & I_i \\
 g_i \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 C & \xrightarrow{s_i} & J_i \\
 \parallel & \Sigma & \downarrow y_i \\
 C & \xrightarrow{y_3} & Y \\
 h_i \downarrow & & \downarrow z_i' \\
 D & \xrightarrow{t_i} & Z \\
 \parallel & \Sigma & \downarrow z_i \\
 D & \xrightarrow{z_3} & Z \\
 & \xrightarrow{v_1} & V_1 \\
 & \xrightarrow{\dot{r}_{3i}} & \dot{B}_{3i}
 \end{array}
 \xrightarrow{\dot{z}_i \sim \mathbf{u}}
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 B & \xrightarrow{r_i} & I_i \\
 g_i \downarrow & & \downarrow \\
 C & \xrightarrow{s_i} & J_i \\
 \parallel & \Sigma & \downarrow y_i x_i \\
 C & \xrightarrow{y_3} & Y \\
 h_i \downarrow & & \downarrow z_i' \\
 D & \xrightarrow{t_i} & Z \\
 \parallel & \Sigma & \downarrow z_i' \\
 D & \xrightarrow{z_3} & Z \\
 & \xrightarrow{v_1} & V_1 \\
 & \xrightarrow{v_2} & \dot{B}_{3i}
 \end{array} \quad (3.50)$$

Thus, using (3.49),

$$(\bar{\gamma} \circ \bar{\beta}) \circ \bar{\alpha} = (\Omega_{22}^{-1} \circ \text{id}_{\bar{f}_2}) \cdot \Omega_{32}^{-1} \cdot [\gamma'' \circ \beta' \circ \alpha, 1_{V_2}, 1_{V_2}] \cdot \Omega_{31} \cdot (\Omega_{21} \circ \text{id}_{\bar{f}_1}). \quad (3.51)$$

Put

$$\hat{\Omega}_i = \Omega_{3i} \cdot (\Omega_{2i} \circ \text{id}_{\bar{f}_i})$$

and

$$\tilde{\Omega}_i = \Omega_{1i} \cdot (\text{id}_{\bar{h}_i} \circ \Omega_i).$$

Thus, using Equation (3.46) and Equation (3.51), we see that, in order to prove (3.40), we just need to show that $\text{Assoc}_{\bar{f}_2, \bar{g}_2, \bar{h}_2} \cdot \hat{\Omega}_2^{-1} = \tilde{\Omega}_2^{-1}$ and $\hat{\Omega}_1 = \tilde{\Omega}_1 \cdot \text{Assoc}_{\bar{f}_1, \bar{g}_1, \bar{h}_1}$. That is, we need to prove that

$$\text{Assoc}_{\bar{f}_i, \bar{g}_i, \bar{h}_i} = \tilde{\Omega}_i^{-1} \cdot \hat{\Omega}_i \quad (i = 1, 2). \quad (3.52)$$

We know that the first member of this equality is an Ω 2-cell. The 2-cells Ω_{1i} and Ω_{3i} correspond to Σ -paths of interest, namely (3.47) and (3.50). Indeed the first one have a Σ -step of type **d** between Σ -schemes of configuration **dc** and a Σ -step of type **s**₁ between Σ -schemes of configuration **s**₁; the second one is just a Σ -step of type **u** between Σ -schemes of configuration **ua**. The 2-cells Ω_i and Ω_{2i} correspond to Σ -steps between Σ -schemes of level 2, each one made of Σ -steps of type *d* and *u*, see ((3.42)) and ((3.48)); then, by Proposition A.5 (see also Corollary A.6), $\Omega_{2i} \circ \text{id}_{\bar{f}}$ and $\text{id}_{\bar{h}} \circ \Omega_i$ are Ω 2-cells corresponding to Σ -paths of interest. Since both members of (3.52) correspond to Σ -paths of interest between Σ -schemes of left border $(r_i, g_i, s_i, h_i, t_i, 1)$, they coincide. \square

Proposition 3.32. *The isomorphisms of Definition 3.26 fulfil the Pentagon Axiom.*

Proof. Let $A \xrightarrow{\bar{f}} B \xrightarrow{\bar{g}} C \xrightarrow{\bar{h}} D \xrightarrow{\bar{k}} E$ be composable 1-cells in $\mathcal{X}[\Sigma_*]$, where $\bar{f} = (f, r)$, $\bar{g} = (g, s)$, $\bar{h} = (h, t)$ and $\bar{k} = (k, u)$. We want to prove the commutativity of the diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & & (\bar{k}\bar{h})(\bar{g}\bar{f}) & & \\
 \text{Assoc}_{\bar{f}, \bar{g}, \bar{k}\bar{h}} \nearrow & & & \searrow \text{Assoc}_{\bar{g}\bar{f}, \bar{h}, \bar{k}} & \\
 ((\bar{k}\bar{h})\bar{g})\bar{f} & & & & \bar{k}(\bar{h}(\bar{g}\bar{f})) \\
 \text{Assoc}_{\bar{g}, \bar{h}, \bar{k}} \circ 1_{\bar{f}} \searrow & & & \nearrow 1_{\bar{k}} \circ \text{Assoc}_{\bar{f}, \bar{g}, \bar{h}} & \\
 & (\bar{k}(\bar{h}\bar{g}))\bar{f} & \xrightarrow{\text{Assoc}_{\bar{f}, \bar{h}\bar{g}, \bar{k}}} & \bar{k}((\bar{h}\bar{g})\bar{f}) &
 \end{array}$$

in $\mathcal{X}[\Sigma_*](A, E)$.

Concerning the top of the pentagon diagram, using the definitions of composition of Σ -cospans and of associator, we see that $\text{Assoc}_{\bar{f}, \bar{g}, \bar{k}\bar{h}}$ is an Ω 2-cell corresponding to a Σ -path of interest of the form

and $\text{Assoc}_{\bar{g}\bar{f}, \bar{h}, \bar{k}}$ is an Ω 2-cell corresponding to a Σ -path of interest of the form

The middle map in the bottom line of the pentagon, $\text{Assoc}_{\bar{f}, \bar{h}\bar{g}, \bar{k}}$, is the Ω 2-cell obtained via the Σ -path of interest

The 2-cells $\text{Assoc}_{\bar{g}, \bar{h}, \bar{k}}$ and $\text{Assoc}_{\bar{f}, \bar{g}, \bar{h}}$ correspond, respectively, to the Σ -paths of level 2

and

Hence, by Proposition A.5, $\text{Assoc}_{\bar{g}, \bar{h}, \bar{k}} \circ 1_{\bar{f}}$ and $1_{\bar{k}} \circ \text{Assoc}_{\bar{f}, \bar{g}, \bar{h}}$ are Ω 2-cells corresponding to Σ -paths of interest between Σ -schemes of left border (r, g, s, t, k) .

Since the top and the bottom of the pentagon correspond to two Σ -paths of interest with the same starting and ending, those Σ -paths are equivalent — that is, the pentagon is commutative in the category $\mathcal{X}[\Sigma_*](A, E)$. \square

Since the unitors are just identities, this finishes the proof of the main result, which was proved in the present section.

Theorem 3.33. $\mathcal{X}[\Sigma_*]$ is a bicategory.

4 The universal property

We want to show that $\mathcal{X}[\Sigma_*]$ is the universal bicategory which turns Σ -morphisms into laris and Σ -squares to Beck–Chevalley squares. Let us start by showing that $\mathcal{X}[\Sigma_*]$ at least does do this.

Definition 4.1. We define a pseudofunctor $P_\Sigma: \mathcal{X} \rightarrow \mathcal{X}[\Sigma_*]$ such that:

- on objects, $P_\Sigma(X) = X$,
- on morphisms, $P_\Sigma(f) = (f, 1)$,
- on 2-morphisms, $P_\Sigma(\alpha) = [\alpha, 1, 1, 1, \text{id}, \text{id}]$,
- the unitors $\iota_X^P: 1_{P_\Sigma(X)} \rightarrow P_\Sigma(1_X)$ are identities,
- the compositors $\gamma_{g,f}^P: P_\Sigma(g) \circ P_\Sigma(f) \rightarrow P_\Sigma(gf)$ are also identities.

Lemma 4.2. P_Σ as defined above is indeed a pseudofunctor.

Proof. It is clear that P_Σ preserves identity 2-cells. For vertical composition of 2-cells, note that to compute the composite $P_\Sigma(\beta) \cdot P_\Sigma(\alpha)$ as in Definition 3.5 we may take the Σ -squares φ_x, φ_y to be vertical identity squares and the isomorphism γ to be an identity 2-cell. Then it is easy to see that $P_\Sigma(\beta) \cdot P_\Sigma(\alpha) = P_\Sigma(\beta \cdot \alpha)$ and so P_Σ preserves vertical composition.

It is also clear that P_Σ preserves identity 1-cells and so the unitors are well-defined. For morphisms $g: A \rightarrow B$ and $f: B \rightarrow C$ in \mathcal{X} , the composite $P_\Sigma(f) \circ P_\Sigma(g)$ is found using the canonical Σ -square

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} A & \xrightarrow{f} & B & \xleftarrow{1_B} & B \\ & & g \downarrow & \Sigma^{\text{id}} & \downarrow g \\ & & C & \xleftarrow{1_C} & C \xleftarrow{1_C} C, \end{array}$$

and so give $P_\Sigma(gf)$ ensuring the compositors are well-defined.

The naturality condition for the compositors requires that $P_\Sigma(\beta) \circ P_\Sigma(\alpha) = P_\Sigma(\beta \circ \alpha)$. Computing the left-hand side as in Definition 3.24 we may take the necessary Σ -squares in Equation (3.19) to be Σ^{id} and $\beta' = \beta$. The desired equality follows.

Finally, we must show the coherence conditions. Coherence for the compositor (the ‘associativity’ condition) reduces to requiring that the Ω 2-cell

$$\text{assoc}_{P_\Sigma(f), P_\Sigma(g), P_\Sigma(h)}: (P_\Sigma(h) \circ P_\Sigma(g)) \circ P_\Sigma(f) \Rightarrow P_\Sigma(h) \circ (P_\Sigma(g) \circ P_\Sigma(f))$$

is the identity. This is immediate, since, by replacing the morphisms r and s with identities in the diagrams (1), (2) and (3) of Definition 3.26, the Ω 2-cell which corresponds to the Σ -path $(1) \xrightarrow{u} (2) \xrightarrow{d} (3)$ have coincident domain and codomain and is clearly the identity. The left and right unit conditions are automatic since all the maps in the diagram are identities. \square

Proposition 4.3. The pseudofunctor P_Σ sends 1-cells in Σ to laris and Σ -squares to Beck–Chevalley squares.

Proof. Consider $s: A \rightarrow B$ in Σ . We first show $P_\Sigma(s) = (s, 1_B)$ is a lari. We claim its right adjoint is $(1_B, s)$. Note that $(1_B, s) \circ (s, 1_B) = (s, s)$. Put

$$\bar{\eta} = [\text{id}_s, s, 1_B, s, \text{id}, \text{id}].$$

This is indeed the basic Ω 2-cell given by the Σ -path $\downarrow \sum \downarrow \xrightarrow{1} \downarrow \sum \downarrow \xrightarrow{s} \downarrow$. In particular, note that $\bar{\eta}$ is invertible.

On the other hand, we find $(s, 1_B) \circ (1_B, s)$ using

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} B & \xrightarrow{1_B} & B & \xleftarrow{s} & A \\ \dot{s}_1 \downarrow & & \Sigma^{\dot{\alpha}} & & \downarrow s \\ \dot{A} & \xleftarrow{\dot{s}_2} & B & \xleftarrow{1_B} & B, \end{array}$$

to give (\dot{s}_1, \dot{s}_2) . Applying Equi-insertion to the above Σ -square and the 2-cell $\dot{\alpha}^{-1}: \dot{s}_1 s \rightarrow \dot{s}_2 s$ we obtain a morphism $q: \dot{A} \rightarrow Q$ and a 2-cell $\varepsilon: q \dot{s}_1 \rightarrow q \dot{s}_2$ such that $q \dot{\alpha}^{-1} = \varepsilon s$ and the following is a Σ -square.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} B & \xrightarrow{\dot{s}_2} & \dot{A} \\ \parallel & \Sigma^{\text{id}} & \downarrow q \\ B & \xrightarrow{q \dot{s}_2} & Q \end{array}$$

We can now form a 2-morphism $\bar{\varepsilon}: (\dot{s}_1, \dot{s}_2) \rightarrow (\text{id}_B, \text{id}_B)$ (using Identity for the lower Σ -square).

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} B & \xrightarrow{\dot{s}_1} & \dot{A} & \xleftarrow{\dot{s}_2} & B \\ \parallel & \varepsilon \swarrow & \downarrow q & \Sigma^{\text{id}} & \parallel \\ & & Q & \xleftarrow{q \dot{s}_2} & B \\ & \nwarrow q \dot{s}_2 & \uparrow \Sigma^{\text{id}} & & \\ B & \xrightarrow{1_B} & B & \xleftarrow{1_B} & B \end{array} \quad (4.1)$$

Using the notations $\bar{s} = (s, 1)$ and $s_* = (1, s)$, we now want to show the triangle identities: $\text{id}_{s_*} = (s_* \circ \bar{\varepsilon}) \cdot (\bar{\eta} \circ s_*)$ and $\text{id}_{\bar{s}} = (\bar{\varepsilon} \circ \bar{s}) \cdot (\bar{s} \circ \bar{\eta})$. Since $\bar{\eta}$ is an Ω 2-cell and using the coherence theorems for Ω 2-cells, it suffices to show that $s_* \circ \bar{\varepsilon}$ and $\bar{\varepsilon} \circ s$ are (equivalent to) Ω 2-cells. Moreover, we can ignore the Ω 2-cells in the definition of horizontal composition and just consider the central 2-cell in Definition 3.24.

For $(1, s) \circ \bar{\varepsilon}$ we arrive at the 2-cell

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} B & \xrightarrow{\dot{s}_1} & \dot{A} & \xrightarrow{q} & Q & \xleftarrow{q} & \dot{A} \xleftarrow{\dot{s}_2} B \xleftarrow{s} A \\ \parallel & & & & \parallel & & \parallel \\ & \varepsilon \swarrow & & & Q & \xleftarrow{\Sigma^{\text{id}}_{q \dot{s}_2 s}} & A \\ & & & & \parallel & & \parallel \\ B & \xrightarrow{\dot{s}_2} & \dot{A} & \xrightarrow{q} & Q & \xleftarrow{q} & \dot{A} \xleftarrow{\dot{s}_2} B \xleftarrow{s} A \end{array} \quad (4.2)$$

from the equality

$$\begin{array}{ccc} B & \xrightarrow{q \dot{s}_2} & Q \\ \parallel & & \parallel \\ B & \xrightarrow{\Sigma^{\text{id}}} & Q \\ \parallel & & \parallel \\ B & \xrightarrow{q \dot{s}_2} & Q \end{array} \xrightarrow{\text{id}_B} \begin{array}{ccc} B & \xrightarrow{q \dot{s}_2} & Q \\ \parallel & & \parallel \\ B & \xrightarrow{\Sigma^{\text{id}}} & Q \\ \parallel & & \parallel \\ B & \xrightarrow{q \dot{s}_2} & Q \end{array}$$

For $\bar{\varepsilon} \circ (s, 1)$ we have the 2-cell

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 A & \xrightarrow{s} & B & \xrightarrow{q\dot{s}_1} & Q & \xleftarrow{q} & \dot{A} \xleftarrow{\dot{s}_2} A \\
 \parallel & \searrow \text{id} & \parallel & \searrow \varepsilon & \parallel & \xleftarrow{\Sigma^{\text{id}}_{q\dot{s}_2}} & \parallel \\
 A & \xrightarrow{s} & B & \xrightarrow{q\dot{s}_2} & Q & \xleftarrow{q} & \dot{A} \xleftarrow{\dot{s}_2} A
 \end{array} \quad (4.3)$$

from the equality

$$\begin{array}{c}
 B \xlongequal{\quad} B \\
 \downarrow \dot{s}_1 \quad \downarrow q\dot{s}_1 \quad \downarrow \varepsilon \quad \downarrow q\dot{s}_2 \\
 \dot{A} \quad \Sigma^{\text{id}} \quad \dot{A} \quad \xrightarrow{\varepsilon} \quad \dot{A} \quad \xrightarrow{\varepsilon} \quad B \quad \Sigma^{\text{id}} \quad \dot{A} \\
 \downarrow q \quad \downarrow q \quad \downarrow q \quad \downarrow q \\
 Q \xlongequal{\quad} Q \quad \quad \quad Q \xlongequal{\quad} Q
 \end{array}$$

Now consider the Σ -squares

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 A & \xrightarrow{s} & B \\
 \downarrow s & \Sigma^{\dot{\alpha}} & \downarrow \dot{s}_1 \\
 B & \xrightarrow{\dot{s}_2} & \dot{A} \\
 \parallel & \Sigma^{\text{id}} & \downarrow q \\
 B & \xrightarrow{q\dot{s}_2} & Q
 \end{array} \quad (4.4)$$

and apply both parts of rule 3 from Proposition 2.8 to obtain the Σ -squares

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 A & \xrightarrow{s} & B \\
 \parallel & \Sigma^{q\dot{\alpha}} & \downarrow q\dot{s}_1 \\
 A & \xrightarrow{q\dot{s}_2 s} & Q
 \end{array} \quad \text{and} \quad \begin{array}{ccc}
 A & \xrightarrow{s} & B \\
 \parallel & \Sigma^{\text{id}} & \downarrow q\dot{s}_2 \\
 A & \xrightarrow{q\dot{s}_2 s} & Q.
 \end{array}$$

To obtain an Ω 2-cell from these squares we use the equality

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 A & \xrightarrow{s} & B \\
 \parallel & \Sigma^{q\dot{\alpha}} & \downarrow q\dot{s}_1 \\
 A & \xrightarrow{q\dot{s}_2 s} & Q \xrightarrow{\varepsilon} Q \\
 \parallel & \Sigma^{\text{id}} & \parallel \\
 A & \xrightarrow{q\dot{s}_2 s} & Q
 \end{array} \quad \xrightarrow{q\dot{s}_2} \quad \begin{array}{ccc}
 A & \xrightarrow{s} & B \\
 \parallel & \Sigma^{\text{id}} & \downarrow q\dot{s}_2 \\
 A & \xrightarrow{q\dot{s}_2 s} & Q \\
 \parallel & \Sigma^{\text{id}} & \parallel \\
 A & \xrightarrow{q\dot{s}_2 s} & Q.
 \end{array}$$

The Ω 2-cell so obtained is then precisely 2-cell (4.2) above for $(1, s) \circ \bar{\varepsilon}$.

For $\bar{\varepsilon} \circ (s, 1)$, a similar approach works. We first compose Σ -square (4.4) with the Σ -square from the Identity axiom, giving

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 A \xlongequal{\quad} A \\
 \parallel & \Sigma^{\text{id}} & \downarrow s \\
 A & \xrightarrow{s} & B \\
 \downarrow s & \Sigma^{\dot{\alpha}} & \downarrow \dot{s}_1 \\
 B & \xrightarrow{\dot{s}_2} & \dot{A} \\
 \parallel & \Sigma^{\text{id}} & \downarrow q \\
 B & \xrightarrow{q\dot{s}_2} & Q.
 \end{array}$$

We also compose Σ -squares from the Identity and Horizontal Repletion axioms to give

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xlongequal{\quad} & A \\ s \downarrow & \Sigma^{\text{id}} & \downarrow s \\ B & \xlongequal{\quad} & B \\ \parallel & \Sigma^{\text{id}} & \downarrow q\dot{s}_2 \\ B & \xrightarrow{q\dot{s}_2} & Q. \end{array}$$

Using the equality

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xlongequal{\quad} & A \\ s \downarrow & \Sigma^{q\dot{\alpha}} & \downarrow q\dot{s}_1 s \\ B & \xrightarrow{q\dot{s}_2} & Q \\ \parallel & \Sigma^{\text{id}} & \parallel \\ B & \xrightarrow{q\dot{s}_2} & Q \end{array} \xrightarrow{q\dot{s}_2 s} \begin{array}{ccc} A & \xlongequal{\quad} & A \\ s \downarrow & \Sigma^{\text{id}} & \downarrow q\dot{s}_2 s \\ B & \xrightarrow{q\dot{s}_2} & Q \\ \parallel & \Sigma^{\text{id}} & \parallel \\ B & \xrightarrow{q\dot{s}_2} & Q \end{array}$$

we find an Ω 2-cell that coincides with 2-cell (4.3). Thus, the triangle identities hold and P_Σ indeed sends 1-cells in Σ to laris.

We now show P_Σ sends Σ -squares to Beck–Chevalley squares. Suppose we have a Σ -square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{s} & B \\ f \downarrow & \Sigma^\delta & \downarrow g \\ C & \xrightarrow{t} & D. \end{array}$$

Then applying P_Σ we have $P_\Sigma(\delta): (t, 1) \circ (f, 1) \rightarrow (g, 1) \circ (s, 1)$. The mate of this is a morphism $(f, 1) \circ (1, s) \rightarrow (1, t) \circ (1, g)$ given by the composite:

$$\begin{aligned} & ((g, t) \circ \varepsilon^s) \cdot \text{Assoc}_{(g,t),(s,1),(1,s)} \cdot (\text{Assoc}_{(1,t),(g,1),(1,s)}^{-1} \circ (1, s)) \\ & \cdot (((1, t) \circ P_\Sigma(\delta)) \circ (1, s)) \cdot (\text{Assoc}_{(1,t),(t,1),(f,1)} \circ (1, s)) \cdot ((\eta^t \circ f) \circ (1, s)). \end{aligned}$$

The Beck–Chevalley condition says that this composite is an isomorphism. All of the factors except $(g, t) \circ \varepsilon^s$ are always isomorphisms. We now show that $(g, t) \circ \varepsilon^s$ is also an isomorphism.

From Σ^δ and the canonical Σ -square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} A & \xrightarrow{s} & B \\ f \downarrow & \Sigma^{\ddot{\alpha}} & \downarrow \ddot{f} \\ B & \xrightarrow{\ddot{s}} & \ddot{A} \end{array}$$

we have an Ω 2-cell between (g, t) and (\ddot{f}, \ddot{s}) . Note that (\ddot{f}, \ddot{s}) is the composite $(f, 1) \circ (1, s)$. Hence $(g, t) \cong (f, 1) \circ (1, s)$ and it suffices to show $(f, 1) \circ ((1, s) \circ \bar{\varepsilon})$ is an isomorphism. But $(1, s) \circ \bar{\varepsilon}$ is an isomorphism by one of the triangle identities and so we are done. \square

Theorem 4.4. *Let \mathcal{X} be a 2-category admitting a left calculus of lax fractions for Σ . The pseudofunctor $P_\Sigma: \mathcal{X} \rightarrow \mathcal{X}[\Sigma_*]$ is the universal (strictly unital) pseudofunctor that satisfies the conditions of Proposition 4.3. More precisely, we have*

- If $F: \mathcal{X} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ is a pseudofunctor sending Σ -morphisms to laris and Σ -squares to BC squares, then there is a pseudofunctor $H: \mathcal{X}[\Sigma_*] \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ such that $F \simeq H \circ P_\Sigma$.
- If $H, H': \mathcal{X}[\Sigma_*] \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ are pseudofunctors and $\xi: H \circ P_\Sigma \rightarrow H' \circ P_\Sigma$ is a pseudonatural transformation for which the pseudo-naturality squares for $r: B \rightarrow I$ in \mathcal{X} are BC squares whenever $r \in \Sigma$, then there is a pseudonatural transformation $v: H \rightarrow H'$ such that $\xi \cong v \circ P_\Sigma$.

- c) If $H, H': \mathcal{X}[\Sigma_*] \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ are pseudofunctors, $v, v': H \rightarrow H'$ are pseudonatural transformations, and $\mathcal{N}: v \circ P_\Sigma \rightarrow v' \circ P_\Sigma$ is a modification, then there is a unique modification $\mathfrak{N}: v \rightarrow v'$ such that $\mathcal{N} = \mathfrak{N} \circ P_\Sigma$.

Remark 4.5. We also remark that if $H: \mathcal{X}[\Sigma_*] \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ is a pseudofunctor, then $H \circ P_\Sigma$ is a pseudofunctor which sends Σ -morphisms to laris and Σ -squares to BC squares (since being a laris or a BC square is preserved by pseudofunctors). Moreover, if $H, H': \mathcal{X}[\Sigma_*] \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ are pseudofunctors and $v: H \rightarrow H'$ is a pseudonatural transformation, then the pseudonaturality squares for $r \in \Sigma$ in $v \circ P_\Sigma$ are BC squares (since for any pseudonatural transformation v , the component at the adjoint of a 1-morphism is the inverse of the mate of the component at the 1-morphism itself).

Proof of Theorem 4.4. Let \mathcal{C} be a bicategory and let $F: \mathcal{X} \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ be a pseudofunctor that sends 1-cells in Σ to laris in \mathcal{C} and Σ -squares to BC squares. We may assume the unitors of \mathcal{C} are identities and that F is strictly unitary. For each laris f of \mathcal{C} we choose a right adjoint f_* such that $(1_X)_* = 1_X$ for every identity 1-cell. There is a pseudofunctor $H: \mathcal{X}[\Sigma_*] \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ defined as follows.

- On objects, $H(X) = F(X)$,
- On morphisms, $H((f, r)) = (Fr)_*(Ff)$,

$$\bullet \text{ On 2-morphisms, } H \left(\begin{array}{ccccc} A & \xrightarrow{f} & I & \xleftarrow{r} & B \\ \parallel & & x_1 \downarrow & \Sigma \delta_1 & \parallel \\ & \nearrow \alpha & X & \xleftarrow{x_3} & B \\ & & x_2 \uparrow & \Sigma \delta_2 & \\ \parallel & & A & \xrightarrow{g} & J & \xleftarrow{s} & B \end{array} \right) = \begin{array}{ccccc} FA & \xrightarrow{Ff} & FI & \xrightarrow{(Fr)_*} & FB \\ \parallel & \nearrow \gamma_{x_1, f} & \downarrow Fx_1 & \nearrow F(\delta_1)_* & \parallel \\ & F(x_1 f) & \downarrow F(\alpha) & FX & \xrightarrow{F(x_3)_*} & FB \\ & \nearrow F(x_2 g) & \downarrow F(x_2) & \nearrow F(\delta_2)_*^{-1} & \\ \parallel & \gamma_{x_2, g} & \downarrow Fx_2 & \parallel & \\ FA & \xrightarrow{Fg} & FJ & \xrightarrow{(Fs)_*} & FB \end{array}$$

where $F(\delta_1)_*$ and $F(\delta_2)_*$ denote the mate of $F(\delta_1)$ and $F(\delta_2)$, respectively.

- The unitors $\iota_X^H: 1_{H(X)} \rightarrow H(1_X)$ are identities,
- The compositors $\gamma_{(g,s),(f,r)}^H: H((g,s)) \circ H((f,r)) \rightarrow H((g,s) \circ (f,r))$ are given by the composite

$$\begin{aligned} & (F(s)_* F(g)) \circ (F(r)_* F(f)) \xrightarrow{\alpha_{F(s)_*, F(g), F(r)_*, F(f)}^{\mathcal{C}-1}} ((F(s)_* F(g)) \circ F(r)_*) \circ F(f) \xrightarrow{\alpha_{F(s)_*, F(g), F(r)_* \circ F(f)}^{\mathcal{C}}} \\ & (F(s)_* \circ (F(g)F(r)_*)) \circ F(f) \xrightarrow{(F(s)_* \circ F(\dot{\beta})) \circ F(f)} (F(s)_* \circ (F(\dot{r})_* F(\dot{g}))) \circ F(f) \xrightarrow{\alpha_{F(s)_*, F(\dot{r})_*, F(\dot{g}) \circ F(f)}^{\mathcal{C}-1}} \\ & ((F(s)_* F(\dot{r})_*) \circ F(\dot{g})) \circ F(f) \xrightarrow{\alpha_{F(s)_*, F(\dot{r})_*, F(\dot{g}) \circ F(f)}^{\mathcal{C}}} (F(s)_* F(\dot{r})_*) \circ (F(\dot{g})F(f)) \xrightarrow{(F(s)_* F(\dot{r})_*) \circ \gamma_{\dot{g}, f}^F} \\ & (F(s)_* F(\dot{r})_*) \circ F(\dot{g}f) \xrightarrow{\sigma \circ F(\dot{g}f)} (F(\dot{r})F(s))_* \circ F(\dot{g}f) \xrightarrow{(\gamma_{\dot{r}, s}^{F-1})_* \circ F(\dot{g}f)} F(\dot{r}s)_* F(\dot{g}f) \end{aligned}$$

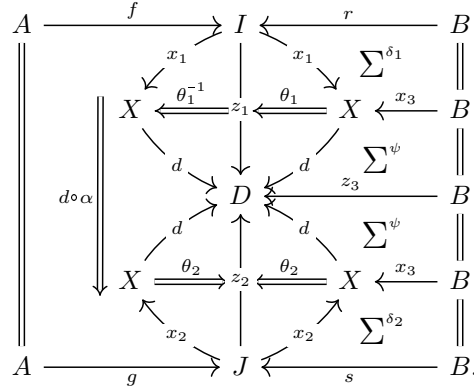
where \dot{g} , \dot{r} and $\dot{\beta}$ are given by the composite $(g, s) \circ (f, r) = (\dot{g}f, \dot{r}s)$ from

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} A & \xrightarrow{f} & I & \xleftarrow{r} & B \\ & & \dot{g} \downarrow & \Sigma \dot{\beta} & \downarrow g \\ & & \dot{B} & \xleftarrow{\dot{r}} & J & \xleftarrow{s} & C, \end{array}$$

and where $\alpha_{\bullet, \bullet, \bullet}^{\mathcal{C}}$ denotes the associator for \mathcal{C} , $\gamma_{\bullet, \bullet}^F$ denotes the compositors for F , $\sigma: F(s)_* F(\dot{r})_* \rightarrow (F(\dot{r})F(s))_*$ is the canonical isomorphism given by composition of adjoints and $(\gamma_{\dot{r}, s}^{F-1})_*: (F(\dot{r})F(s))_* \rightarrow F(\dot{r}s)_*$ is the mate of the inverse of the compositors.

We show this indeed is a pseudofunctor. Here it will be useful to make use of string diagrams.

First we must show that H is well-defined on 2-morphisms. Let us consider a Σ -extension of the 2-morphism $(\alpha, x_1, x_2, x_3, \delta_1, \delta_2)$:



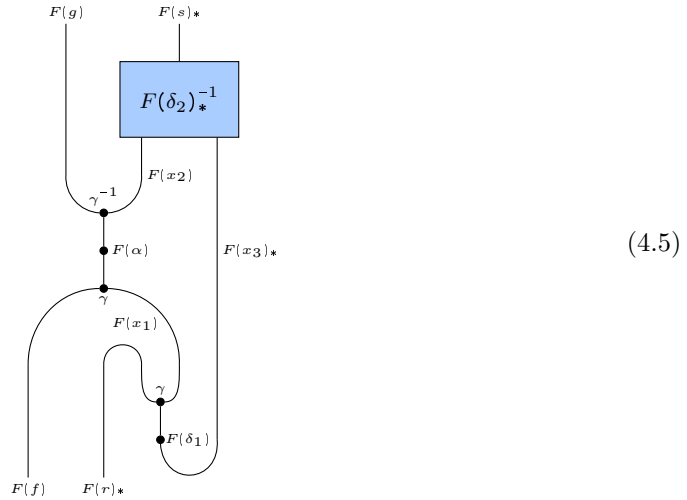
Applying H to $(\alpha, x_1, x_2, x_3, \delta_1, \delta_2)$ gives

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 FA & \xrightarrow{Ff} & FI & \xrightarrow{(Fr)_*} & FB \\
 \downarrow \gamma_{x_1, f}^F & \searrow & \downarrow Fx_1 & \searrow & \downarrow F(\delta_1)_* \\
 F(x_1 f) & & FX & \xrightarrow{F(x_3)_*} & FB \\
 \downarrow F(\alpha) & \nearrow & \downarrow Fx_2 & \searrow & \downarrow F(\delta_2)_*^{-1} \\
 F(x_2 g) & & FJ & \xrightarrow{(Fs)_*} & FB \\
 \downarrow \gamma_{x_2, g}^F & \nearrow & & & \\
 FA & \xrightarrow{Fg} & FJ & \xrightarrow{(Fs)_*} & FB,
 \end{array}$$

while applying H to the above Σ -extension gives

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 FA & \xrightarrow{Ff} & FI & \xrightarrow{(Fr)_*} & FB \\
 \downarrow \gamma_{z_1, f}^F & \searrow & \downarrow Fz_1 & \searrow & \downarrow F(\theta_1 r \cdot d\delta_1)_* \\
 F(z_1 f) & & FX & \xrightarrow{F(z_3)_*} & FB \\
 \downarrow F(\theta_2 g \cdot d\alpha \cdot \theta_1^{-1} f) & \nearrow & \downarrow Fz_2 & \searrow & \downarrow F(\theta_2 r \cdot d\delta_2)_*^{-1} \\
 F(z_2 g) & & FJ & \xrightarrow{(Fs)_*} & FB \\
 \downarrow \gamma_{z_2, g}^F & \nearrow & & & \\
 FA & \xrightarrow{Fg} & FJ & \xrightarrow{(Fs)_*} & FB.
 \end{array}$$

To show these are equal we express both in terms of string diagrams. The former gives



where the blue box depicts the inverse of the 2-morphism represented the following diagram.

$$(4.6)$$

The latter gives

$$(4.7)$$

(Here the three boxes represent the three rectangles in the diagram for H applied to the

Σ -extension.) Also, $F(\theta_2 r \cdot d\delta_2 \cdot \psi)_*$ is represented by

(4.8)

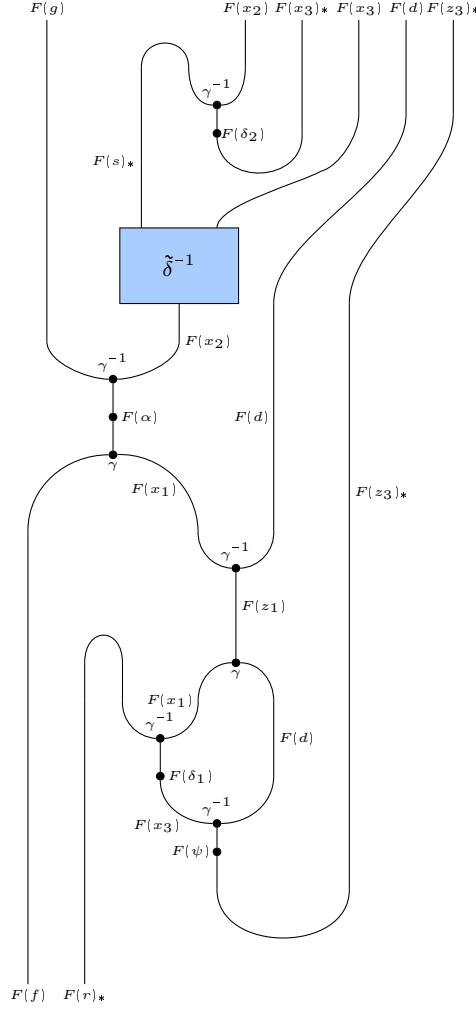
In the string diagram 4.7, $F(\theta_1)$ cancels with $F(\theta_1^{-1})$, and $F(\theta_2)$ (together with its nearby compositor) cancels with the $F(\theta_2)^{-1}$ (and its compositor) from the inverse of $F(\theta_2 r \cdot d\delta_2 \cdot \psi)_*$.

Now we compose Equation (4.7) and Equation (4.5) on the top with

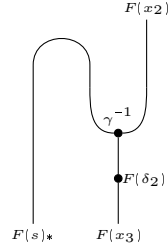
(4.9)

(which is an isomorphism since $\eta^{F(z_3)}$ is and $F(\delta_2)$ forms a BC square). Part of this cancels with the blue box in Equation (4.5) and another part partially cancels with the blue box in Equation (4.7). So what was Equation (4.5) becomes

and what was Equation (4.7) yields



where $\tilde{\delta}^{-1}$ denotes the inverse of



Observe that if we compose both of these with $\varepsilon^{F(x_3)}$ (whiskered with the appropriate morphisms) on the top and apply one of the triangle identities we arrive at the same result in each case. While $\varepsilon^{F(x_3)}$ is not an isomorphism, its resulting composition with Equation (4.9) is one by the BC condition for $F(\delta_2)$ and the form of the resulting inverse of its mate. So we have proved the equality of the two original 2-cells, and hence H is well-defined on 2-cells.

One can then show that H preserves vertical composition of 2-cells and that the coherence conditions hold. It is then easy to see that $F = H \circ P_\Sigma$. We omit these proofs from the current version of this document.

Now we show the ‘2-dimensional’ universality condition (b). Assume $H, H': \mathcal{X}[\Sigma_*] \rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ and that $\xi: H \circ P_\Sigma \rightarrow H' \circ P_\Sigma$ is a pseudonatural transformation. We define $v: H \rightarrow H'$ by

- $v_X = \xi_X$ for objects $X \in \mathcal{X}$,

- $v_{(f,r)}$ for $(f,r) \in \mathcal{X}[\Sigma_*]$ is given by the composite

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} H(A) & \xrightarrow{H(f)} & H(I) & \xrightarrow{H(r)} & H(B) \\ \xi_A \downarrow & \nearrow \xi_f & \downarrow \xi_I & \nearrow (\xi_r)_*^{-1} & \downarrow \xi_B \\ H'(A) & \xrightarrow{H'(f)} & H'(I) & \xrightarrow{H'(r)_*} & H'(B) \end{array}$$

where we write $H(f)$ for $H((f, \text{id})) = H(P_\Sigma(f))$ and where $(\xi_r)_*^{-1}$ denotes the inverse of the mate of ξ_r .

As before we omit from the current version the proofs that this is indeed a pseudonatural transformation and that $\xi = v \circ P_\Sigma$.

Finally, for the ‘3-dimensional’ universality condition (c). For data as in the statement of the theorem we simply set $\mathfrak{L}_X = \mathfrak{N}_X$. Yet again, we omit from this version the (easy) proof that this is a modification. It is also clearly the only modification \mathfrak{L} such that $\mathfrak{N} = \mathfrak{L} \circ P_\Sigma$. \square

A On Σ -paths and Ω 2-cells

This appendix completes Section 3.2 by presenting the proofs of Proposition 3.14 (here Corollary A.4), Proposition 3.21 (here included in Proposition A.5), and Proposition 3.20 (here Proposition A.7).

Lemma A.1 and Remark A.2 are going to have a role in the proof of Proposition A.3, which states a fundamental property needed for the rest of this section.

Lemma A.1. *Given $f \downarrow \sum \xrightarrow{u} \downarrow f_i \sum \xrightarrow{v} \downarrow f'_i$, $i = 1, 2$, there are Σ -squares and invertible 2-cells*

θ and θ' such that

$$(1) \quad \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{u} \\ f \downarrow \sum \xrightarrow{u_1} \downarrow f_1 \sum \xrightarrow{f_2} \\ \parallel \sum \downarrow d_1 \sum \downarrow d_2 \\ \xrightarrow{d} \end{array} \xRightarrow{\theta} \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{u} \\ f \downarrow \sum \xrightarrow{u_2} \downarrow f_2 \\ \parallel \sum \downarrow d_2 \\ \xrightarrow{d} \end{array}, \quad (2) \quad \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{v} \\ f_1 \downarrow \sum \xrightarrow{v_1} \downarrow f'_1 \sum \xrightarrow{f'_2} \\ d_1 \downarrow \sum \xrightarrow{e} \downarrow e_2 \end{array} \xRightarrow{\theta'} \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{v} \\ f_1 \downarrow \sum \xrightarrow{v_2} \downarrow f'_2 \\ d_1 \downarrow \sum \xrightarrow{e} \downarrow e_2 \end{array}$$

and, consequently, also

$$(3) \quad \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{u} \xrightarrow{v} \\ f \downarrow \sum \xrightarrow{u_1} \downarrow f_1 \sum \xrightarrow{v_1} \downarrow f'_1 \sum \xrightarrow{f'_2} \\ \parallel \sum \downarrow d_1 \sum \downarrow d_2 \sum \downarrow e_1 \sum \downarrow e_2 \\ \xrightarrow{d} \end{array} \xRightarrow{\theta'} \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{u} \xrightarrow{v} \\ f \downarrow \sum \xrightarrow{u_1} \downarrow f_2 \sum \xrightarrow{v_1} \downarrow f'_2 \\ \parallel \sum \downarrow d_2 \sum \downarrow e_2 \\ \xrightarrow{d} \end{array}.$$

Proof. (1) It is just Rule 4' of Proposition 2.8.

(2) By Rule 6 of the same proposition, we obtain

$$\begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{v} \\ f_i \downarrow \sum \downarrow q_i \\ d_i \downarrow \sum \downarrow q \end{array} \quad (i = 1, 2) \quad \text{and} \quad q_1 \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\psi} \\ \downarrow \end{array} q_2$$

such that

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 & \xrightarrow{v} & \\
 f_1 \downarrow & \Sigma & \downarrow q_1 \xRightarrow{\psi} q_2 \\
 d_1 \downarrow & D \xrightarrow{q} Q & \\
 & \nwarrow & \nearrow
 \end{array} = \begin{array}{ccc}
 & \xrightarrow{v} & \\
 f_1 \downarrow & \Sigma & \downarrow q_2 \\
 \theta \xRightarrow{\quad} & \downarrow d_2 & \\
 d_1 \downarrow & D \xrightarrow{q} Q & \\
 & \nwarrow & \nearrow
 \end{array} .$$

On the other hand, for every $i = 1, 2$, by applying Square followed by Rule 4', we get

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 & \xrightarrow{v} & \\
 f_i \downarrow & \Sigma & \downarrow f'_i \xRightarrow{q_i} \\
 d_i \downarrow & \Sigma & \downarrow d'_i \xRightarrow{\varphi_i} Q \\
 w_i \xrightarrow{\quad} & D_i & \\
 \parallel & \Sigma & \downarrow r_{i1} \\
 D \xrightarrow{r_i} & R_i & \nwarrow r_{i2}
 \end{array} = \begin{array}{ccc}
 & \xrightarrow{v} & \\
 f_i \downarrow & \Sigma & \downarrow q_i \\
 d_i \downarrow & \Sigma & \downarrow r_{i2} \\
 \parallel & \Sigma & \downarrow r_{i2} \\
 D \xrightarrow{r_i} & R_i &
 \end{array} .$$

Using again Rule 4', we obtain

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 D \xrightarrow{q} Q & \searrow r_{22} & \\
 \parallel \Sigma \downarrow r_{12} & & \\
 D \xrightarrow{r_1} R_1 \xRightarrow{\rho} R_2 & = & D \xrightarrow{q} Q \\
 \parallel \Sigma \downarrow s_1 & & \parallel \Sigma \downarrow r_{22} \\
 D \xrightarrow{e} E & \nwarrow s_2 & D \xrightarrow{r_2} R_2 \\
 & & \parallel \Sigma \downarrow s_2 \\
 & & D \xrightarrow{e} E
 \end{array}$$

with ρ invertible. Thus we have the following pasting diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 & \xrightarrow{v} & & & \\
 f_1 \downarrow & \xrightarrow{v_1} & \downarrow f'_1 & \xrightarrow{f'_2} & \\
 d_1 \downarrow & \xrightarrow{w_1} & \downarrow d'_1 & \xrightarrow{\varphi_1} & \downarrow d'_2 \\
 & \xrightarrow{w_1} & D_1 & \xrightarrow{\varphi_1} & Q & \xrightarrow{\varphi_2^{-1}} & D_2 \\
 & \parallel \Sigma \downarrow r_{11} & & \parallel \Sigma \downarrow r_{22} & & \parallel \Sigma \downarrow r_{21} \\
 D \xrightarrow{r_1} R_1 & \xRightarrow{\rho} & R_2 & & \\
 \parallel \Sigma \downarrow s_1 & & \parallel \Sigma \downarrow s_2 & & \\
 D \xrightarrow{e} E & & & &
 \end{array}$$

Put $e_i = s_i r_{i1} d'_i$ and $\theta' = (s_2 \circ \varphi_2^{-1}) \cdot (\rho \circ \psi) \cdot (s_1 \circ \varphi_1)$. It is easy to see that in this way we obtain the desired situation (2). \square

Remark A.2. Given two 2-morphisms

$$\left\| \begin{array}{ccc} \xrightarrow{f} & \xleftarrow{r} & \\ \alpha \nearrow & \downarrow \Sigma & \\ x_2 \uparrow & \xleftarrow{x_3} & \\ \xrightarrow{g} & \xleftarrow{s} & \end{array} \right\| \quad \text{and} \quad \left\| \begin{array}{ccc} \xrightarrow{f} & \xleftarrow{r} & \\ \beta \nearrow & \downarrow \Sigma & \\ y_2 \uparrow & \xleftarrow{y_3} & \\ \xrightarrow{g} & \xleftarrow{s} & \end{array} \right\| \quad (\text{A.1})$$

apply Rule 4 to obtain μ_1 and μ_2 invertible such that

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \xrightarrow{r} \\
 \parallel \downarrow \Sigma \\
 \xrightarrow{x_3} \downarrow x_1 \xrightarrow{\mu_1} \\
 \parallel \downarrow \Sigma \\
 \xrightarrow{t} \downarrow t_1 \xrightarrow{t_2} \\
 \parallel \downarrow \Sigma \\
 \xrightarrow{x_3} \downarrow t_1 \xrightarrow{\mu_2} \\
 \parallel \downarrow \Sigma \\
 \xrightarrow{s} \downarrow x_2 \xrightarrow{y_2}
 \end{array}
 =
 \begin{array}{c}
 \xrightarrow{r} \\
 \parallel \downarrow \Sigma \\
 \xrightarrow{y_3} \downarrow y_1 \\
 \parallel \downarrow \Sigma \\
 \xrightarrow{t} \downarrow t_2 \\
 \parallel \downarrow \Sigma \\
 \xrightarrow{y_3} \downarrow t_2 \\
 \parallel \downarrow \Sigma \\
 \xrightarrow{s} \downarrow y_2
 \end{array}
 .$$

Assume that there is a Σ -square $\begin{array}{ccc} & \xrightarrow{u} & \\ h \downarrow & \Sigma & \downarrow t_2 y_1 f \\ & \xrightarrow{t} & \end{array}$ such that

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \xrightarrow{u} \quad \xrightarrow{g} \\
 \downarrow f \quad \searrow \alpha \quad \downarrow x_2 \quad \downarrow y_2 \\
 \Sigma \downarrow y_1 \quad \xrightarrow{\mu_1^{-1}} \quad \downarrow \mu_2 \\
 \downarrow t \quad \downarrow t_2 \quad \downarrow t_1 \quad \downarrow t_2
 \end{array}
 =
 \begin{array}{c}
 \xrightarrow{u} \quad \searrow g \\
 \downarrow f \quad \searrow \beta \\
 \Sigma \downarrow y_1 \quad \downarrow y_2 \\
 \downarrow t \quad \downarrow t_2
 \end{array}
 .$$

Then the 2-morphisms of (A.1) are \approx -equivalent.

Indeed, applying Equification to the Σ -square $\begin{array}{ccc} & \xrightarrow{u} & \\ h \downarrow & \Sigma & \downarrow \\ & \xrightarrow{t} & \end{array}$ together with the 2-cells $(\mu_2 \circ$

$g) \cdot (t_1 \circ \alpha) \cdot (\mu_1^{-1} \circ f)$ and $t_2 \circ \beta$, we obtain a 2-morphism which is a Σ -extension of both the two 2-morphisms of (A.1).

Proposition A.3. For Σ -schemes S_1, S_2, S_3 and S_4 of level 3 with common left border, every two Σ -paths of the form $S_1 \rightsquigarrow^i S_3 \rightsquigarrow^j S_2$ and $S_1 \rightsquigarrow^j S_4 \rightsquigarrow^i S_2$, where $i, j \in \{\mathbf{d}, \mathbf{u}, \mathbf{s}, \mathbf{d}_1, \mathbf{s}_1\}$, are equivalent.

Proof. The cases $i = j$, $\{i, j\} = \{\mathbf{d}, \mathbf{d}_1\}$ and $\{i, j\} = \{\mathbf{s}, \mathbf{s}_1\}$ follow from Lemma 3.12.

Case $i = \mathbf{d}$ and $j = \mathbf{u}$. We have $S_1 \rightsquigarrow^{\mathbf{d}} S_3 \rightsquigarrow^{\mathbf{u}} S_4$ and $S_1 \rightsquigarrow^{\mathbf{u}} S_4 \rightsquigarrow^{\mathbf{d}} S_2$. The combination of the Σ -steps of type \mathbf{d} with the ones of type \mathbf{u} oblige the four Σ -schemes to have the configuration

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \xrightarrow{\quad} \\
 \downarrow \quad \downarrow \quad \downarrow \\
 \xrightarrow{\quad} \downarrow \quad \downarrow \quad \downarrow \\
 \downarrow \quad \downarrow \quad \downarrow \quad \downarrow
 \end{array}
 .$$

Hence, our Σ -paths look as follows:

$$(P1) \quad \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{r} \\ \downarrow g \quad \downarrow h_2 \\ \Sigma \downarrow s_1 \quad \downarrow h_1 \quad \downarrow r_1 \\ \downarrow t \quad \downarrow h \quad \downarrow s_1 \quad \downarrow h_1 \quad \downarrow r_1 \\ \Sigma \downarrow k \quad \downarrow s_2 \quad \downarrow k_1 \quad \downarrow r_2 \end{array} \rightsquigarrow^{\mathbf{d}} \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{r} \\ \downarrow g \quad \downarrow h_2 \\ \Sigma \downarrow s_1 \quad \downarrow h_1 \quad \downarrow r_1 \\ \downarrow t \quad \downarrow h \quad \downarrow s_1 \quad \downarrow h_1 \quad \downarrow r_1 \\ \Sigma \downarrow k \quad \downarrow s_2 \quad \downarrow k_1 \quad \downarrow r_2 \end{array} \rightsquigarrow^{\mathbf{u}} \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{r} \\ \downarrow g \quad \downarrow h_3 \\ \Sigma \downarrow s_1 \quad \downarrow h_1 \quad \downarrow r_3 \\ \downarrow t \quad \downarrow h \quad \downarrow s_1 \quad \downarrow h_1 \quad \downarrow r_3 \\ \Sigma \downarrow k \quad \downarrow s_2 \quad \downarrow k_1 \quad \downarrow r_3 \end{array}$$

$$(P2) \quad \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{r} \\ \downarrow g \\ \Sigma \\ \downarrow h_1 \\ \Sigma \\ \downarrow h_2 \\ \Sigma \\ \downarrow k_1 \\ \Sigma \\ \downarrow k_2 \end{array} \xrightarrow{\mathbf{u}} \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{r} \\ \downarrow g \\ \Sigma \\ \downarrow h_1 \\ \Sigma \\ \downarrow h_3 \\ \Sigma \\ \downarrow k_1 \\ \Sigma \\ \downarrow k_3 \end{array} \xrightarrow{\mathbf{d}} \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{r} \\ \downarrow g \\ \Sigma \\ \downarrow h_1 \\ \Sigma \\ \downarrow h_3 \\ \Sigma \\ \downarrow k_1 \\ \Sigma \\ \downarrow k_3 \end{array}$$

We want to show that they give rise to the same Ω 2-cell.

A. We describe a 2-morphism representing the Ω 2-cell corresponding to (P1).

Observe that, using Lemma A.1, we obtain Σ -squares and invertible 2-cells θ and θ' such that

$$\begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{t} \xrightarrow{s_1} \\ \downarrow k \quad \Sigma \quad \downarrow k_1 \\ \xrightarrow{s_2} \quad \downarrow a_1 \\ \parallel \quad \Sigma \quad \downarrow a_2 \\ \xrightarrow{a} \end{array} \xrightarrow{\theta} \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{t} \xrightarrow{s_1} \\ \downarrow k \quad \Sigma' \\ \xrightarrow{s_2'} \quad \downarrow a_2 \\ \parallel \quad \Sigma \\ \xrightarrow{a} \end{array} \quad \text{with} \quad \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{r_1} \\ \downarrow k_1 \quad \Sigma \\ \xrightarrow{r_2} \quad \downarrow a_1 \\ \parallel \quad \Sigma \\ \xrightarrow{b} \end{array} \xrightarrow{\theta'} \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{r_1} \\ \downarrow k_2 \quad \Sigma' \\ \xrightarrow{r_2'} \quad \downarrow b_2 \\ \parallel \quad \Sigma \\ \xrightarrow{b} \end{array} \quad (A.2)$$

Thus, as in Lemma A.1, we have

$$\begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{t} \xrightarrow{s_1} \xrightarrow{r_1} \\ \downarrow k \quad \Sigma \quad \downarrow k_1 \quad \Sigma' \\ \xrightarrow{s_2} \quad \downarrow a_1 \quad \xrightarrow{r_2} \quad \downarrow b_1 \\ \parallel \quad \Sigma \quad \downarrow a_2 \quad \Sigma' \\ \xrightarrow{a} \quad \downarrow b_2 \end{array} \xrightarrow{\theta'} \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{t} \xrightarrow{s_1} \xrightarrow{r_1} \\ \downarrow k \quad \Sigma' \quad \downarrow k_1' \quad \Sigma' \\ \xrightarrow{s_2'} \quad \downarrow a_2' \quad \xrightarrow{r_2'} \quad \downarrow b_2' \\ \parallel \quad \Sigma \quad \downarrow a_2' \quad \Sigma' \\ \xrightarrow{a} \quad \downarrow b_2' \end{array} \quad (A.3)$$

Moreover, by Rule 4', we have Σ -squares and φ invertible such that

$$\begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{r} \\ \downarrow g \\ \Sigma \\ \downarrow h_1 \\ \Sigma \\ \downarrow k_1' \\ \Sigma \\ \downarrow c_1 \\ \xrightarrow{c} \end{array} \xrightarrow{\varphi} \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{r} \\ \downarrow g \\ \Sigma \\ \downarrow h_1 \\ \Sigma \\ \downarrow k_1' \\ \Sigma \\ \downarrow c_1 \\ \xrightarrow{c} \end{array} \quad (A.4)$$

Hence, (A.3) and (A.4) give rise to the following vertical juxtaposition of the two basic Ω 2-morphisms corresponding to (P1):

$$\begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{h_2} \xrightarrow{k_2} \xleftarrow{r_2} \xleftarrow{s_2} \\ \parallel \quad \parallel \quad \downarrow b_1 \quad \Sigma \quad \downarrow a_1 \quad \Sigma \quad \parallel \\ \xrightarrow{h_2} \quad \downarrow b_2 \quad \xleftarrow{b} \quad \Sigma \quad \uparrow a_2 \quad \Sigma \quad \parallel \\ \parallel \quad \parallel \quad \downarrow c_1 \quad \Sigma \quad \parallel \quad \Sigma \quad \parallel \\ \xrightarrow{h_3} \quad \downarrow c_2 \quad \xleftarrow{c} \quad \Sigma \quad \parallel \quad \Sigma' \quad \parallel \\ \parallel \quad \parallel \quad \downarrow c_2' \quad \Sigma' \quad \parallel \quad \Sigma' \quad \parallel \end{array} \quad (A.5)$$

In order to obtain the vertical composition of these two 2-morphisms, first observe that with the help of Rule 4', we have Σ -squares and an invertible 2-cell ψ such that

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\begin{array}{ccc}
\begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{r_2'} \\ \downarrow a_2 \end{array} & \Sigma & \begin{array}{c} \downarrow b_2 \\ \xrightarrow{\psi} \end{array} \\
A & \xrightarrow{b} & B \\
\parallel & \Sigma & \downarrow \hat{a}_1 \\
A & \xrightarrow{\hat{c}} & \hat{C}
\end{array} & \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{c_1} \\ \xleftarrow{\hat{a}_2} \end{array} & \\
= & \begin{array}{ccc}
\begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{r_2'} \\ \parallel \end{array} & \Sigma & \begin{array}{c} \downarrow c_1 \\ \xrightarrow{c} \end{array} \\
\downarrow a_2 & & C \\
\downarrow \hat{a}_2 & & \\
A & \xrightarrow{\hat{c}} & \hat{C}
\end{array} & . & (A.6)
\end{array}$$

By composing both members on the left with $\parallel \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{s_2} \\ \sum \\ \xrightarrow{a} \end{array} \downarrow_{a_2}$, we see that then the vertical composition of the 2-morphisms of (A.7) is given by the 2-morphism

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
\overrightarrow{h_2} & \xrightarrow{\quad k_2 \quad} & \overleftarrow{r_2} & \xleftarrow{s_2} \\
|| & & b_1 \downarrow \Sigma & \downarrow a_1 \Sigma \\
|| & \theta' \swarrow & B & \xleftarrow{b} A \\
|| & b_2 \searrow & \hat{a}_1 \downarrow \Sigma & \xleftarrow{a} \Sigma \\
\overrightarrow{h_2} & \xrightarrow{k'_2} & \psi \nearrow \hat{C} & \xleftarrow{\hat{c}} \Sigma \\
|| & & c_1 \searrow \hat{C} & \xleftarrow{\hat{c}} \Sigma \\
|| & \varphi \nwarrow & C & \xleftarrow{c} \Sigma \\
\overrightarrow{h_3} & \xrightarrow{k'_3} & c_2 \uparrow \Sigma & \xleftarrow{s'_2} \Sigma \\
|| & & r'_3 & \xleftarrow{s'_2}
\end{array}
\tag{A.7}$$

B. In order to form the vertical composition corresponding to (P2), observe that, for the first Σ -step, we have a basic Ω 2-cell determined by the following data:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{ccc}
\begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{r} \end{array} & & \\
\downarrow g & & \searrow h_3 \\
\Sigma & & \\
\downarrow h_1 & \xrightarrow{r_1} & \xrightarrow{\alpha} \\
\Sigma & \downarrow k_2 & \downarrow k_3 \\
\downarrow k_1 & \xrightarrow{r_2} & \\
\Sigma & \downarrow d_1 & \swarrow d_2 \\
\parallel & \xrightarrow{d} & D
\end{array}
\end{array}
=
\begin{array}{c}
\begin{array}{ccc}
\begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{r} \end{array} & & \\
\downarrow g & & \downarrow h_3 \\
\Sigma & & \\
\downarrow h_1 & \xrightarrow{r_3} & \downarrow \\
\Sigma & \downarrow k_3 & \\
\downarrow k_1 & \xrightarrow{r_4} & \downarrow k_3 \\
\Sigma & \downarrow d_2 & \\
\parallel & \xrightarrow{d} & D
\end{array}
\end{array}
\end{array}$$

For the second Σ -step, use Lemma A.1 to first obtain, θ exactly as the first equality in (A.2), then the equality

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
\begin{array}{ccc}
\begin{array}{c} \curvearrowright \\ \downarrow k_1 \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{r_3} \\ \downarrow k'_1 \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} \curvearrowright \\ \downarrow k'_3 \end{array} \\
\begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\theta} \\ \downarrow a_1 \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} \Sigma \\ \downarrow a_2 \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} \Sigma \\ \downarrow b_4 \end{array} \\
A & \xrightarrow{b} & B
\end{array}
=
\begin{array}{ccc}
\begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{r_3} \\ \downarrow k_1 \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{r_3} \\ \downarrow k'_3 \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} \curvearrowright \\ \downarrow k'_3 \end{array} \\
\begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{r_4} \\ \downarrow a_1 \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} \Sigma \\ \downarrow a_2 \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\theta''} \\ \downarrow b_3 \end{array} \\
A & \xrightarrow{b} & B
\end{array}
\quad (A.8)
\end{array}$$

Observe that, without loss of generality, we may indeed use the same morphism $A \xrightarrow{b} B$ in (A.4) and (A.8): if in (A.8) we have $A \xrightarrow{b'} B'$, instead of $A \xrightarrow{b} B$, just take Square of b along b' , and then apply Rule 3 of Proposition 2.8.

Thus, as described in Lemma A.1, we have that

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \xrightarrow{t} \xrightarrow{s_1} \xrightarrow{r_2} \\
 \downarrow k \quad \Sigma \quad \downarrow k_1 \quad \Sigma \quad \downarrow k_3 \quad \theta'' \\
 \xrightarrow{s_2} \xrightarrow{r_4} \xrightarrow{k'_3} \\
 \parallel \quad \Sigma \quad \downarrow a_1 \quad \Sigma \quad \downarrow b_3 \quad \downarrow b_4 \\
 \xrightarrow{a} \xrightarrow{b} A \xrightarrow{b} B
 \end{array}
 =
 \begin{array}{c}
 \xrightarrow{t} \xrightarrow{s_1} \xrightarrow{r_2} \\
 \downarrow k \quad \Sigma \quad \downarrow k'_1 \quad \Sigma \quad \downarrow k'_3 \\
 \xrightarrow{s'_2} \xrightarrow{r'_3} \xrightarrow{k'_3} \\
 \parallel \quad \Sigma \quad \downarrow a_2 \quad \Sigma \quad \downarrow b_4 \\
 \xrightarrow{a} \xrightarrow{b} A \xrightarrow{b} B
 \end{array}
 .$$

Combining the two Σ -steps of (P2), we obtain:

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \xrightarrow{h_2} \xrightarrow{k_2} \xleftarrow{r_2} \xleftarrow{s_2} \\
 \parallel \quad \swarrow \alpha \quad \downarrow d_1 \quad \Sigma \quad \parallel \quad \Sigma \quad \parallel \\
 \quad \quad \quad D \xleftarrow{d} \quad \xleftarrow{s_2} \\
 \downarrow h_3 \quad \downarrow k_3 \quad \downarrow d_2 \quad \downarrow r_4 \quad \downarrow s_2 \\
 \parallel \quad \downarrow b_3 \quad \Sigma \quad \downarrow a_1 \quad \Sigma \quad \parallel \\
 = \quad \swarrow \theta'' \quad \downarrow b_3 \quad \downarrow b_4 \quad \downarrow r'_3 \quad \downarrow s'_2 \\
 \downarrow h_3 \quad \downarrow k'_3 \quad \downarrow r'_3 \quad \downarrow s'_2
 \end{array}
 \quad (A.9)$$

Now, in order to obtain the vertical composition of the two 2-morphisms of (A.9), we need

to apply Rule 4' to $\parallel \frac{\xrightarrow{r_4 s_2}}{\xrightarrow{ds_2}} \downarrow d_2$ and $\parallel \frac{\xrightarrow{r_4 s_2}}{\xrightarrow{ba}} \downarrow b_3$. For that, use Square applied to d and a_1 ,

followed by Rule 4', to obtain the equality of the part drawn in solid lines in diagram (A.10) below.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \xrightarrow{s_2} \xrightarrow{r_4} \xrightarrow{b_3} \\
 = \Sigma = \parallel \quad \Sigma \quad \downarrow d_2 \quad \downarrow b_3 \\
 \xrightarrow{s_2} \xrightarrow{d} \xrightarrow{D} \xrightarrow{\delta} \\
 \downarrow s_2 \quad \downarrow a_1 \quad \downarrow \Sigma \quad \downarrow \Sigma \quad \downarrow a_1 \quad \downarrow \Sigma \\
 \xrightarrow{a} \xrightarrow{A} \xrightarrow{b_1} \xrightarrow{\tilde{b}_1} \\
 \downarrow \Sigma \quad \downarrow \Sigma \quad \downarrow \Sigma \quad \downarrow \Sigma \quad \downarrow \Sigma \quad \downarrow \Sigma \\
 \xrightarrow{a} \xrightarrow{A} \xrightarrow{\tilde{b}} \xrightarrow{\tilde{B}}
 \end{array}
 =
 \begin{array}{c}
 \xrightarrow{s_2} \xrightarrow{r_4} \xrightarrow{b_3} \\
 \downarrow \Sigma \quad \downarrow a_1 \quad \downarrow \Sigma \quad \downarrow b_3 \\
 \xrightarrow{a} \xrightarrow{A} \xrightarrow{b} \xrightarrow{\tilde{b}_2} \\
 \downarrow \Sigma \quad \downarrow \Sigma \quad \downarrow \Sigma \quad \downarrow \Sigma \\
 \xrightarrow{a} \xrightarrow{A} \xrightarrow{\tilde{b}} \xrightarrow{\tilde{B}}
 \end{array}
 \quad (A.10)$$

Then compose both members on the left of the solid-line part of the diagram with $\parallel \frac{\xrightarrow{s_2}}{\xrightarrow{a}} \downarrow a_1$.

The resulting equality leads to the vertical composition of the two 2-morphisms of (A.9):

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \xrightarrow{h_2} \xrightarrow{k_2} \xleftarrow{r_2} \xleftarrow{s_2} \\
 \parallel \quad \swarrow \alpha \quad \downarrow d_1 \quad \Sigma \quad \parallel \quad \Sigma \quad \parallel \\
 \quad \quad \quad D \xleftarrow{d} \quad \xleftarrow{s_2} \\
 \downarrow h_3 \quad \downarrow k_3 \quad \downarrow d_2 \quad \downarrow \tilde{b}_1 \quad \downarrow \tilde{b}_2 \quad \downarrow \tilde{b}_3 \\
 \parallel \quad \downarrow b_3 \quad \downarrow \tilde{b}_3 \quad \downarrow \tilde{b}_2 \quad \downarrow \tilde{b}_1 \quad \downarrow \tilde{b}_3 \\
 = \quad \swarrow \theta'' \quad \downarrow b_3 \quad \downarrow b_4 \quad \downarrow r'_3 \quad \downarrow s'_2 \\
 \downarrow h_3 \quad \downarrow k'_3 \quad \downarrow r'_3 \quad \downarrow s'_2
 \end{array}
 \quad (A.11)$$

C. Now, in order to compare the 2-morphism (A.7) with the 2-morphism (A.11), observe first that the column of Σ -squares on the right-side is equal in both of them. Thus, in the following we ignore that column and take care only of the remaining part of the two 2-morphisms. For concluding the \approx -equivalence between them we use the property stated in Remark A.2. Accordingly, apply Rule 4 to obtain

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \begin{array}{c}
 \xrightarrow{r_2} \\
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 a_1 \downarrow & \Sigma & \downarrow b_1 \\
 A & \xrightarrow{b} & B \\
 \parallel & \Sigma & \downarrow \hat{a}_1 \\
 A & \xrightarrow{\hat{c}} & \hat{C} \\
 \parallel & \Sigma & \downarrow t_1 \\
 A & \xrightarrow{t} & T \\
 \parallel & \Sigma & \uparrow t_1 \\
 A & \xrightarrow{\hat{c}} & \hat{C} \\
 \parallel & \Sigma & \uparrow \hat{a}_2 \\
 a_2 \uparrow & \xrightarrow{c} & C \\
 \parallel & \Sigma & \uparrow c_2 \\
 & \xrightarrow{r'_3} &
 \end{array}
 \end{array}
 \begin{array}{c}
 \xrightarrow{r_2} \\
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 \Sigma & \downarrow d_1 \\
 \xrightarrow{d} & B \\
 \Sigma & \downarrow \tilde{b}_1 \\
 A & \xrightarrow{\tilde{h}} & \tilde{B} \\
 \parallel & \Sigma & \downarrow t_2 \\
 A & \xrightarrow{t} & T \\
 \parallel & \Sigma & \uparrow t_2 \\
 A & \xrightarrow{\tilde{h}} & \tilde{B} \\
 \parallel & \Sigma & \uparrow \tilde{b}_2 \\
 a_2 \uparrow & \xrightarrow{b} & C \\
 \parallel & \Sigma & \uparrow b_4 \\
 & \xrightarrow{r'_3} &
 \end{array}
 \end{array}
 \end{array}
 =
 \begin{array}{c}
 \xrightarrow{r_2} \\
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 \Sigma & \downarrow d_1 \\
 \xrightarrow{d} & B \\
 \Sigma & \downarrow \tilde{b}_1 \\
 A & \xrightarrow{\tilde{h}} & \tilde{B} \\
 \parallel & \Sigma & \downarrow t_2 \\
 A & \xrightarrow{t} & T \\
 \parallel & \Sigma & \uparrow t_2 \\
 A & \xrightarrow{\tilde{h}} & \tilde{B} \\
 \parallel & \Sigma & \uparrow \tilde{b}_2 \\
 a_2 \uparrow & \xrightarrow{b} & C \\
 \parallel & \Sigma & \uparrow b_4 \\
 & \xrightarrow{r'_3} &
 \end{array}
 \end{array}
 .$$

With respect to the left-side part of (A.7) and (A.11), put

$$\begin{aligned}
 \Lambda_1 &= (\hat{a}_2 \circ \varphi) \cdot (\psi \circ k'_2 h_2) \cdot (\hat{a}_1 \circ \theta' \circ h_2) : \hat{a}_1 b_1 k_2 h_2 \Rightarrow \hat{a}_2 c_2 k'_3 h_3; \\
 \Lambda_2 &= (\tilde{b}_2 \circ \theta'' \circ h_3) \cdot (\delta \circ k_3 h_3) \cdot (\tilde{b}_1 \circ \alpha) : \tilde{b}_1 d_1 k_2 h_2 \Rightarrow \tilde{b}_2 b_4 k'_3 h_3.
 \end{aligned}$$

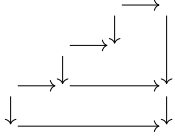
Using the previous equalities, we easily obtain the equalities

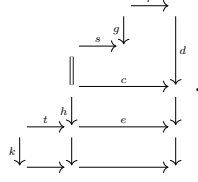
$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \begin{array}{c}
 \xrightarrow{r} \\
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 g \downarrow & \Sigma & \downarrow h_2 \\
 h_1 \downarrow & \xrightarrow{r_1} & \\
 k_1 \downarrow & \Sigma & \downarrow k_2 \\
 \xrightarrow{r_2} & & \\
 \parallel & \Sigma & \downarrow d_1 \\
 \xrightarrow{d} & D & \\
 a_1 \downarrow & \Sigma & \downarrow \tilde{b}_1 \\
 \xrightarrow{\tilde{b}} & \tilde{B} & \\
 \parallel & \Sigma & \downarrow t_2 \\
 \xrightarrow{t} & T &
 \end{array}
 \end{array}
 \xrightarrow{\Lambda_1}
 \begin{array}{c}
 \xrightarrow{r} \\
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 g \downarrow & \Sigma & \downarrow h_2 \\
 h_1 \downarrow & \xrightarrow{r_1} & \\
 k'_1 \downarrow & \Sigma & \downarrow k'_2 \\
 \xrightarrow{r'_2} & & \\
 \parallel & \Sigma & \downarrow d_1 \\
 \xrightarrow{d} & D & \\
 a_1 \downarrow & \Sigma & \downarrow \tilde{b}_1 \\
 \xrightarrow{\tilde{b}} & \tilde{B} & \\
 \parallel & \Sigma & \downarrow t_2 \\
 \xrightarrow{t} & T &
 \end{array}
 \end{array}
 \xrightarrow{\Lambda_2}
 \begin{array}{c}
 \xrightarrow{r} \\
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 g \downarrow & \Sigma & \downarrow h_2 \\
 h_1 \downarrow & \xrightarrow{r_1} & \\
 k_1 \downarrow & \Sigma & \downarrow k_2 \\
 \xrightarrow{r_2} & & \\
 \parallel & \Sigma & \downarrow d_1 \\
 \xrightarrow{d} & D & \\
 a_1 \downarrow & \Sigma & \downarrow \tilde{b}_1 \\
 \xrightarrow{\tilde{b}} & \tilde{B} & \\
 \parallel & \Sigma & \downarrow t_2 \\
 \xrightarrow{t} & T &
 \end{array}
 \end{array}
 \end{array}
 =
 \begin{array}{c}
 \xrightarrow{r} \\
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 g \downarrow & \Sigma & \downarrow h_2 \\
 h_1 \downarrow & \xrightarrow{r_1} & \\
 k'_1 \downarrow & \Sigma & \downarrow k'_2 \\
 \xrightarrow{r'_2} & & \\
 \parallel & \Sigma & \downarrow d_1 \\
 \xrightarrow{d} & D & \\
 a_1 \downarrow & \Sigma & \downarrow \tilde{b}_1 \\
 \xrightarrow{\tilde{b}} & \tilde{B} & \\
 \parallel & \Sigma & \downarrow t_2 \\
 \xrightarrow{t} & T &
 \end{array}
 \end{array}
 =
 \begin{array}{c}
 \xrightarrow{r} \\
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 g \downarrow & \Sigma & \downarrow h_2 \\
 h_1 \downarrow & \xrightarrow{r_1} & \\
 k_1 \downarrow & \Sigma & \downarrow k_2 \\
 \xrightarrow{r_2} & & \\
 \parallel & \Sigma & \downarrow d_1 \\
 \xrightarrow{d} & D & \\
 a_1 \downarrow & \Sigma & \downarrow \tilde{b}_1 \\
 \xrightarrow{\tilde{b}} & \tilde{B} & \\
 \parallel & \Sigma & \downarrow t_2 \\
 \xrightarrow{t} & T &
 \end{array}
 \end{array}
 .$$

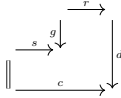
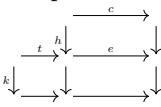
Consequently, by Remark A.2, the 2-morphisms represented in (A.7) and (A.11) are \approx -equivalent.

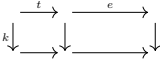
Case $i = \mathbf{d}$ and $j = \mathbf{s}_1$ (or $j = \mathbf{s}$). We consider $j = \mathbf{s}_1$, for $j = \mathbf{s}$ the procedure is the same.

We have two Σ -paths of the form $S_1 \rightsquigarrow^{\mathbf{d}} S_3 \rightsquigarrow^{\mathbf{s}_1} S_2$ and $S_1 \rightsquigarrow^{\mathbf{s}_1} S_4 \rightsquigarrow^{\mathbf{d}} S_2$. The Σ -steps $S_1 \rightsquigarrow^{\mathbf{d}} S_3$ and $S_4 \rightsquigarrow^{\mathbf{d}} S_2$ determine that the four Σ -schemes are of the

form . The combination of this with the existence of the Σ -steps $S_3 \xrightarrow{s_1} S_2$ and $S_1 \xrightarrow{s_1} S_4$ implies that all Σ -schemes are of the form

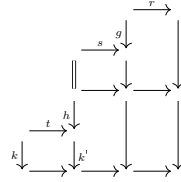


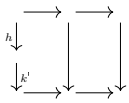
Observe that along the two Σ -paths,  remains unchanged. Thus, to obtain the basic Ω 2-cells, and the subsequent two Ω 2-cells corresponding to the two Σ -paths, we just need to work with the part . Now the procedure is analogous to the previous case: we

make use of Lemma A.1 applied to the parts of the form  in the passages of type **d** and, at the end, we use Remark A.1 to conclude that the two Σ -paths give rise to \approx -equivalent 2-morphisms.

Case $i = \mathbf{u}$ and $j = \mathbf{s}_1$ (or $j = \mathbf{s}$). We consider $j = s_1$, for $j = s$, the procedure is the same.

We have two Σ -paths of the form $S_1 \xrightarrow{\mathbf{u}} S_3 \xrightarrow{s_1} S_2$ and $S_1 \xrightarrow{s_1} S_4 \xrightarrow{\mathbf{u}} S_2$. Thus, the four Σ -schemes are of the form

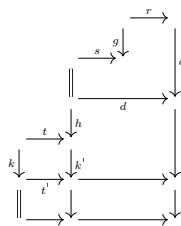


In each Σ -step above, the Σ -squares $\parallel \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{s} \\ \Sigma \\ \xrightarrow{\quad} \end{array} \downarrow$ and $k \downarrow \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{t} \\ \Sigma \\ \xrightarrow{\quad} \end{array} \downarrow k'$ remain unchanged, then they do not interfere on the Σ -steps. To obtain the desired result we act as for $i = \mathbf{d}$ and $j = \mathbf{u}$: Apply Lemma A.1 to the parts of the Σ -schemes given by  in the passages of type **s**, and, at the end, use Remark A.2.

Case $i = \mathbf{u}$ and $j = \mathbf{d}_1$. It is similar to $i = \mathbf{u}$ and $j = \mathbf{d}$.

Case $i = \mathbf{s}$ and $j = \mathbf{d}_1$. It is similar to $i = \mathbf{d}$ and $j = \mathbf{s}$.

Case $i = \mathbf{d}_1$ and $j = \mathbf{s}_1$. We easily see that all the Σ -schemes have the configuration



where the parts $\begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{s} \downarrow g \\ \parallel \xrightarrow{\quad} \downarrow c \\ \xrightarrow{\quad} \downarrow d \end{array}$ and $\begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{t} \downarrow k \\ \xrightarrow{\quad} \downarrow t' \\ \xrightarrow{\quad} \downarrow k' \end{array}$ are unchanged. We proceed as for the

first case, by applying Lemma A.1 to the part $\begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{t'} \downarrow \\ \parallel \xrightarrow{\quad} \downarrow \\ \xrightarrow{\quad} \downarrow \end{array}$ when obtaining the basic Ω 2-cells corresponding to the passages d_1 and use Remark A.2. \square

Corollary A.4. *Every two Σ -paths of length equal or less than 2 between Σ -schemes of level 3 are equivalent. Equivalently, every cycle of 4 or less Σ -steps between Σ -schemes of level 3 are equivalent to an identity Σ -step.*

Proof. For cycles of length 1 or 2, it was already seen in Lemma 3.12. Concerning cycles of length 3, it suffices to consider the cases where we have three consecutive Σ -steps all of different types. Indeed in case we have two repeated types, then, since a Σ -path of two Σ -steps of the same type are equivalent to one Σ -path of just one Σ -step of that type, we fall in the case of length 1 or 2.

It remains to consider all cycles of length 3 or 4 not yet encompassed by Proposition A.3. Indeed, all of them follow from Lemma 3.12 and that proposition. Moreover, most of the cases follow also from Proposition 3.20, where the property is stated for cycles of all finite lengths when we restrict to certain configurations of Σ -schemes.

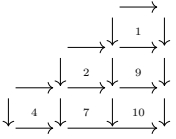
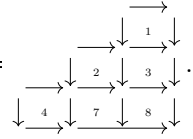
Cycles of length 3. If the cycle contains the Σ -steps \mathbf{s} and \mathbf{s}_1 , or the Σ -steps \mathbf{d} and \mathbf{d}_1 , then the result follows immediately from Lemma 3.12. Since every Σ -step may be seen as an undirected edge (because basic Ω 2-cells are invertible and the inverse corresponds to a Σ -step of the same type, just reversed), the only cases to study are \mathbf{dus} , \mathbf{dus}_1 , $\mathbf{d}_1\mathbf{us}$ and $\mathbf{d}_1\mathbf{us}_1$. We analyse \mathbf{dus} , the remaining cases are similar.

Case \mathbf{dus} . Let us consider

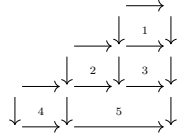
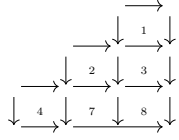
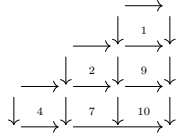
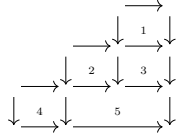
$$S_1 \rightsquigarrow^{\mathbf{d}} S_2 \rightsquigarrow^{\mathbf{u}} S_3 \rightsquigarrow^{\mathbf{s}} S_1 .$$

Observe that, taking into account the type of the Σ -steps in turn, we conclude as follows, where the necessary equal Σ -squares will be indicated with the same number:

- S_1 is simultaneously of the forms \mathbf{d} and \mathbf{s} , hence $S_1 = \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\quad} \downarrow \downarrow \\ \xrightarrow{\quad} \downarrow \downarrow \\ \downarrow \xrightarrow{\quad} \downarrow \downarrow \end{array};$
- S_2 is simultaneously of the forms \mathbf{d} and \mathbf{u} , hence $S_2 = \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\quad} \downarrow \downarrow \\ \xrightarrow{\quad} \downarrow \downarrow \\ \downarrow \xrightarrow{\quad} \downarrow \downarrow \end{array};$
- S_3 is simultaneously of the forms \mathbf{u} and \mathbf{s} , hence $S_3 = \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\quad} \downarrow \downarrow \\ \xrightarrow{\quad} \downarrow \downarrow \\ \downarrow \xrightarrow{\quad} \downarrow \downarrow \end{array};$
- $\mathbf{d}: S_1 \rightsquigarrow S_2$ obliges us to have $S_1 = \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\quad} \downarrow 1 \downarrow \\ \xrightarrow{\quad} \downarrow 2 \downarrow 3 \downarrow \\ \downarrow 4 \xrightarrow{\quad} \downarrow 5 \end{array}$ and $S_2 = \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\quad} \downarrow 1 \downarrow \\ \xrightarrow{\quad} \downarrow 2 \downarrow 3 \downarrow \\ \downarrow 6 \xrightarrow{\quad} \downarrow \end{array};$
- $\mathbf{u}: S_2 \rightsquigarrow S_3$ obliges us to have $S_3 = \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\quad} \downarrow \downarrow \\ \xrightarrow{\quad} \downarrow 2 \downarrow \downarrow \\ \downarrow 6 \xrightarrow{\quad} \downarrow \end{array};$

• $\mathbf{s}: S_3 \rightsquigarrow S_1$ requires $S_3 =$  and $S_2 =$ .

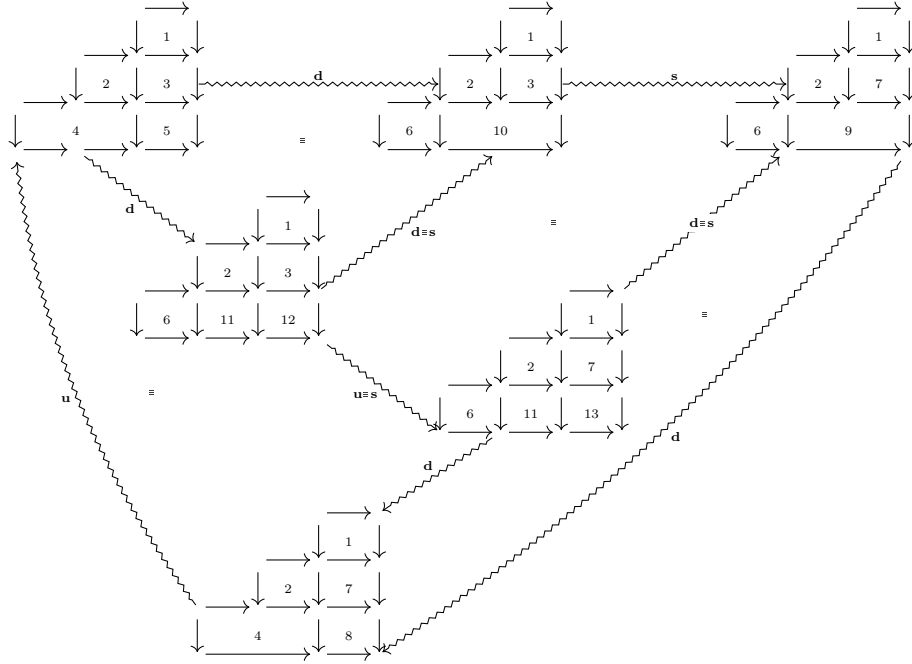
Consequently, we have:

 \rightsquigarrow  \rightsquigarrow  \rightsquigarrow 

Observe that the basic Ω 2-cell corresponding to \mathbf{d} may be obtained by applying Rule 4' just to the Σ -squares 5 and $7 \oplus 8$ and composing with the Σ -square 4. Then, it coincides with the basic Ω 2-cell obtained by the Σ -step of type \mathbf{s} . Analogously, the Ω 2-cell corresponding to \mathbf{u} may be obtained by applying Rule 4' to the Σ -squares $3 \odot 8$ and $9 \odot 10$ and composing with the Σ -square 1. Thus, this Ω 2-cell also coincides with the one obtaining by a Σ -step of type \mathbf{s} . Therefore, we conclude that the Σ -path is equivalent to a Σ -path of length 1 made of a Σ -step of type \mathbf{s} , and hence it is just the identity.

Cycles of length 4. We need to analyse the cases not reducible to a cycle of length ≤ 3 and not encompassed by Proposition A.3.

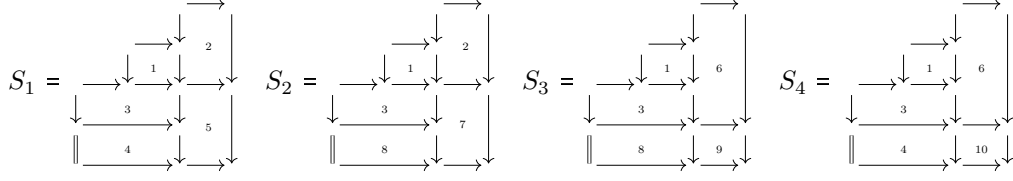
Case \mathbf{duds} . Arguing in a way similar to the one of case \mathbf{dsu} , we see that the Σ -schemes of a cycle of Σ -steps \mathbf{duds} must be of the form represented by the outside Σ -path of the diagram below. The equivalences of Σ -paths and Σ -steps indicated by the symbol \equiv are easily seen — namely, we use the fact that the juxtaposition of Σ -steps of the same type is equivalent to a Σ -step of that type, and the case $i = \mathbf{d}$ and $j = \mathbf{u}$ studied in Proposition A.3. Consequently, we see that the Ω 2-cell corresponding to the Σ -cycle is the identity.



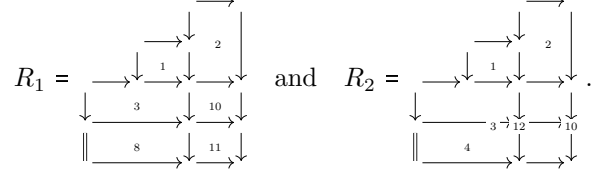
Case $\mathbf{dud}_1\mathbf{u}$. Arguing in a similar way as above we see that our cycle is of the form

$$S_1 \rightsquigarrow^{\mathbf{d}} S_2 \rightsquigarrow^{\mathbf{u}} S_3 \rightsquigarrow^{\mathbf{d}_1} S_4 \rightsquigarrow^{\mathbf{u}} S_1$$

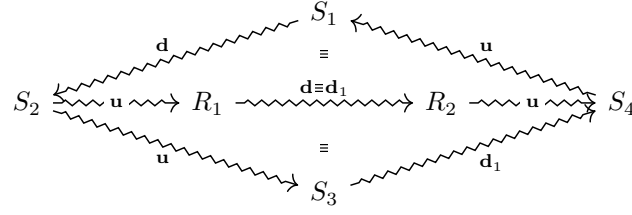
with



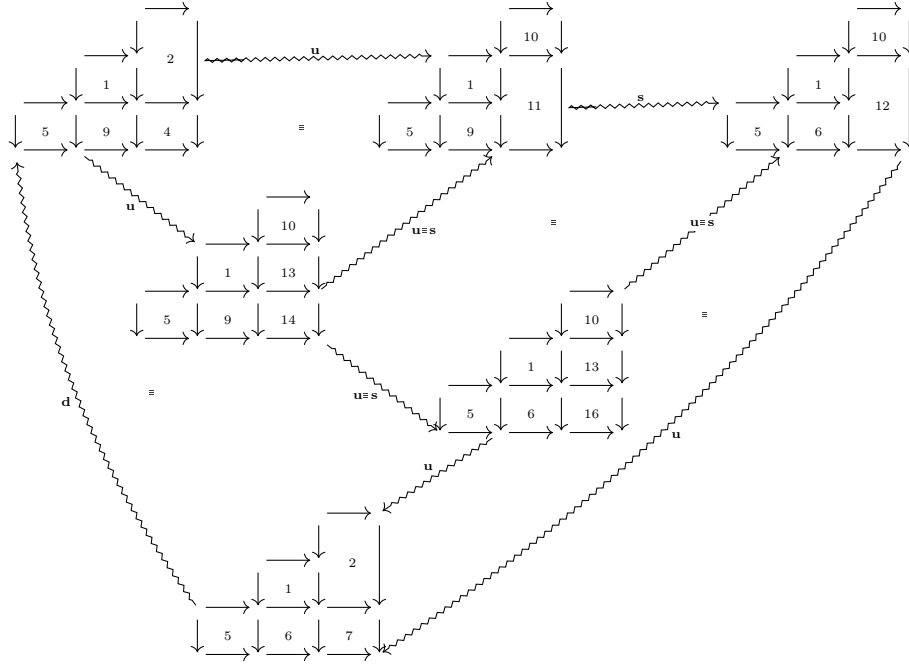
Let



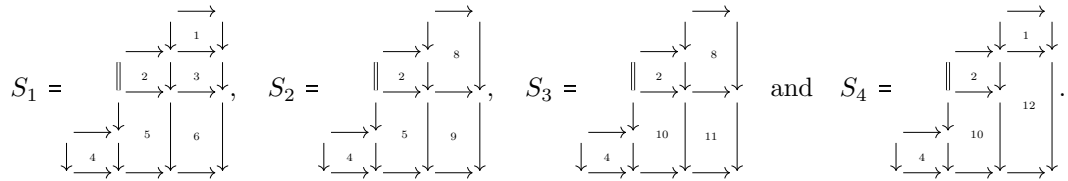
Then, using Lemma 3.12 and Proposition 3.14, we see the indicated equivalences of Σ -paths:



Case **udus**. Analogously, we conclude as desired seeing that the cycle **udus** must be as described in the outside part of the diagram below and observing that the indicated equivalences between Σ -paths are verified.



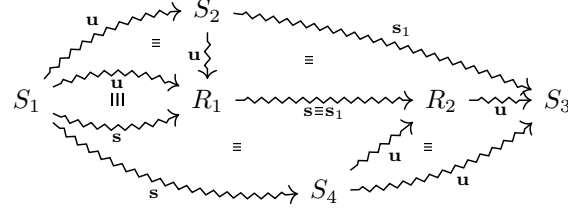
Case **us₁us**. In order to have the sequence of Σ -steps $S_1 \xrightarrow{u} S_2 \xrightarrow{s_1} S_3 \xrightarrow{u} S_4 \xrightarrow{s} S_1$, the Σ -schemes are of the form



Let

$$R_1 = \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\quad} \\ \downarrow 1 \\ \xrightarrow{\quad} \downarrow 2 \quad \downarrow 13 \\ \downarrow 4 \quad \downarrow 5 \quad \downarrow 9 \end{array} \quad \text{and} \quad R_2 = \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\quad} \\ \downarrow 1 \\ \xrightarrow{\quad} \downarrow 2 \quad \downarrow 13 \\ \downarrow 4 \quad \downarrow 10 \quad \downarrow 14 \end{array}.$$

The following diagram shows that the given cycle is indeed equivalent to the identity Σ -path.



The remaining cases can be obtained by arguing in a similar way. \square

Recall the notion of **configuration of interest** and **Σ -path of interest** given in Definition 3.18. Recall also that the canonical Σ -scheme of level 3 and of a given left border is made of canonical Σ -squares, and is represented by

$$\text{Can} = \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\quad} \\ \downarrow \cdot \downarrow \\ \xrightarrow{\quad} \downarrow \cdot \downarrow \cdot \downarrow \\ \downarrow \cdot \downarrow \cdot \downarrow \cdot \downarrow \end{array}.$$

The next proposition, which is just Proposition 3.21 given in more detail, states that the horizontal composition of an identity Ω 2-cell with an Ω 2-cell is also an Ω 2-cell.

Proposition A.5. *Let $A \xrightarrow{\bar{f}} B \xrightarrow{\bar{g}} C \xrightarrow{\bar{h}} D \xrightarrow{\bar{k}} E$ be Σ -cospans, where $\bar{f} = (f, r)$, $\bar{g} = (g, s)$, $\bar{h} = (h, t)$ and $\bar{k} = (k, u)$.*

(1) *Let $\Omega: (l_1 g, m_1 u) \rightarrow (l_2 g, m_2 u)$ be a basic Ω 2-cell determined by a Σ -step of level 2 of the type d or u between two Σ -schemes of left border (s, h, t, k) and right border (l_i, m_i) , respectively. Then the 2-cell $\Omega \circ 1_{\bar{f}}$ is an Ω 2-cell corresponding to a Σ -path of interest of Σ -schemes of level 3 and left border (r, g, s, h, t, k) .*

(2) *Let $\Omega: (l_1 f, m_1 t) \rightarrow (l_2 f, m_2 t)$ be a basic Ω 2-cell determined by a Σ -step of level 2 of the type d or u between two Σ -schemes of left border (r, g, s, h) and right border (l_i, m_i) , respectively. Then the 2-cell $1_{\bar{k}} \circ \Omega$ is an Ω 2-cell corresponding to a Σ -path of interest of Σ -schemes of level 3 and left border (r, g, s, h, t, k) .*

Moreover, $\Omega \circ 1_{\bar{f}}$ and $1_{\bar{k}} \circ \Omega$ are given by the following table, where the canonical Σ -squares are indicated by a bullet, and the others Σ -squares are indicated by numbers.

Σ -step for Ω	Σ -path for the composition $\Omega \circ f$

Σ -step for Ω	Σ -path for the composition $k \circ \Omega$

Proof. (1) Let Ω be the Ω 2-cell corresponding to the Σ -step

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 & \xrightarrow{s} & \\
 t \downarrow & \xrightarrow{h} & \downarrow h' \\
 & \xrightarrow{1} & \\
 k \downarrow & \xrightarrow{2} & \downarrow k_1
 \end{array}
 \xrightarrow{d}
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 & \xrightarrow{s} & \\
 t \downarrow & \xrightarrow{h} & \downarrow h' \\
 & \xrightarrow{1} & \\
 k \downarrow & \xrightarrow{3} & \downarrow k_2
 \end{array}
 .$$

Thus, here $(l_i, m_i) = (k_i h', t_i)$. Let it be represented by the 2-morphism

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \xrightarrow{g} \quad \xrightarrow{h'} \quad \xrightarrow{k_1} \quad \xleftarrow{t_1} \quad \xleftarrow{u} \\
 \parallel \quad = \quad \parallel \quad \theta \quad \downarrow d_1 \quad \leftarrow \Sigma \quad \parallel \quad \leftarrow \Sigma \quad \parallel \\
 \xrightarrow{g} \quad \xrightarrow{h'} \quad \parallel \quad \uparrow d_2 \quad \leftarrow \Sigma \quad \parallel \quad \leftarrow \Sigma \quad \parallel \\
 \parallel \quad \parallel \quad \parallel \quad \parallel \quad \parallel \quad \parallel \quad \parallel \quad \parallel \quad \parallel \quad \parallel
 \end{array}$$

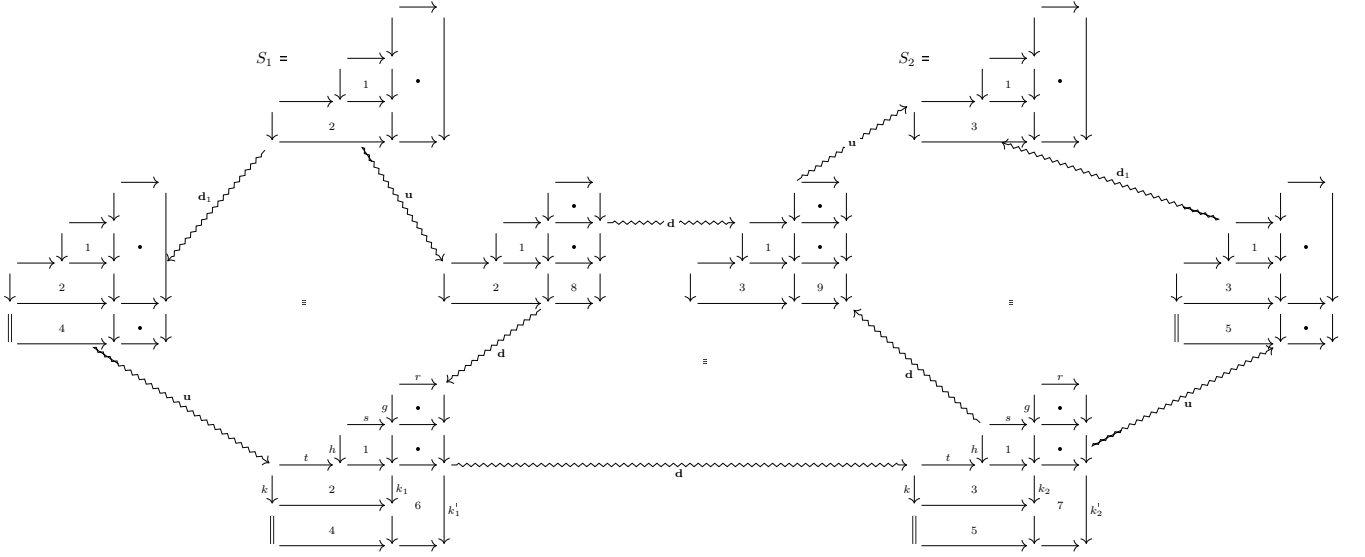
with θ invertible. Now, in order to compose with $\bar{f} = (f, r)$, consider the following vertical composition of Σ -squares and an invertible 2-cell θ' as follows:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \xrightarrow{r} & & \xrightarrow{r'} \\
 g \downarrow \Sigma & & \downarrow k_1 \Sigma \\
 \xrightarrow{r'} & & \xrightarrow{r'} \\
 h \downarrow \Sigma & & \downarrow d_1 \Sigma \\
 \xrightarrow{r'} & & \xrightarrow{r'}
 \end{array}
 \xrightarrow{\theta'}
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 \xrightarrow{r'} & & \xrightarrow{r'} \\
 k_1 \downarrow \Sigma & & \downarrow k_2 \Sigma \\
 \xrightarrow{r'} & & \xrightarrow{r'} \\
 d_1 \downarrow \Sigma & & \downarrow d_2 \Sigma \\
 \xrightarrow{r'} & & \xrightarrow{r'}
 \end{array}$$

Thus, we can use $\theta' \circ \dot{h} \circ \dot{g}$ to obtain the middle 2-morphism of the desired horizontal composition (see Definition 3.24):

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \xrightarrow{f} \quad \xrightarrow{\dot{g}} \quad \xrightarrow{\dot{h}} \quad \xrightarrow{k_1'} \quad \xleftarrow{e} \quad \xleftarrow{d} \quad \xleftarrow{u} \\
 \parallel \quad = \quad \parallel \quad = \quad \parallel \quad \Downarrow \theta' \quad \parallel \quad \leftarrow \Sigma^{\text{id}} \quad \parallel \quad \leftarrow \Sigma \quad \parallel \\
 \xrightarrow{f} \quad \xrightarrow{\dot{g}} \quad \xrightarrow{\dot{h}} \quad \xrightarrow{k_2'} \quad \xleftarrow{e} \quad \xleftarrow{d} \quad \xleftarrow{u}
 \end{array}$$

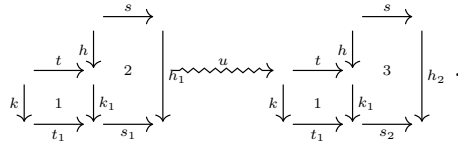
This 2-morphism is an Ω 2-morphism. Indeed it corresponds to a Σ -step of type **d** between Σ -schemes of level 3, as illustrated by the Σ -step **d** of the bottom of the next diagram. Combining this with the definition of horizontal composition as described in Definition 3.24, we see that the composition $\Omega \circ \bar{f}$ is given by the vertical composition of basic Ω 2-cells corresponding to the Σ -path $\xrightarrow{d_1} \xrightarrow{u} \xrightarrow{d} \xrightarrow{u} \xrightarrow{d_1}$ formed by the bottom part from S_1 to S_2 in the following diagram:



The equivalences of Σ -paths indicated in this diagram are clear: recall from Corollary A.4 that two Σ -paths of the form $S_1 \xrightarrow{d_1} S_3 \xrightarrow{u} S_2$ and $S_1 \xrightarrow{u} S_4 \xrightarrow{d} S_2$ are equivalent.

Therefore, we conclude that $\Omega \circ \bar{f}$ is given by a Σ -path of the form indicated in the table.

Let now Ω be the Ω 2-cell corresponding to the Σ -step



Thus, here $(l_i, m_i) = (h_i, s_i t_i)$. Let it be represented by the 2-morphism

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \begin{array}{ccccccc}
 & g & & h_1 & & s_1 & & t_1 & & u \\
 \parallel & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \parallel & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \parallel & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \parallel & \xleftarrow{\quad} & \parallel & \xleftarrow{\quad} \\
 & g & & h_2 & & s_2 & & t_1 & & u
 \end{array} \\
 = \\
 \begin{array}{ccccccc}
 & g & & h_2 & & s_2 & & t_1 & & u \\
 \parallel & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \parallel & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \parallel & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \parallel & \xleftarrow{\quad} & \parallel & \xleftarrow{\quad} \\
 & g & & h_2 & & s_2 & & t_1 & & u
 \end{array}
 \end{array}$$

with θ invertible. Now, in order to compose it with $\bar{f} = (f, r)$, consider the canonical Σ -square of r along g and an invertible 2-cell θ' as follows:

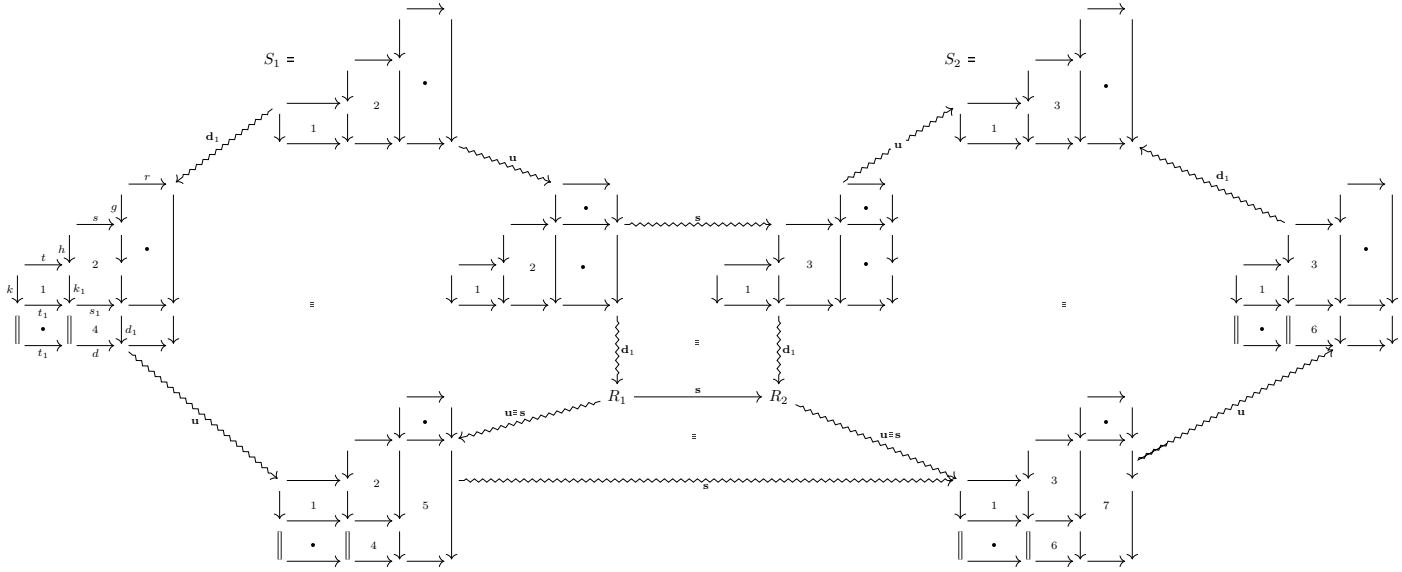
$$\begin{array}{c}
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 & r & \\
 g \downarrow & \Sigma & \downarrow \dot{g} \\
 & \dot{r} &
 \end{array}
 \quad
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 & \dot{r} & \\
 h_1 \downarrow & \Sigma & \downarrow h_2' \\
 d_1 \downarrow & e & \downarrow h_2'
 \end{array}
 \quad
 \begin{array}{ccc}
 & \dot{r} & \\
 h_1 \downarrow & \Sigma & \downarrow h_2' \\
 d_1 \downarrow & e & \downarrow h_2'
 \end{array}
 \end{array}$$

The 2-morphism of the middle of the representative of $\theta \circ 1_{\bar{f}}$ is given by the diagram

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \begin{array}{ccccccc}
 & f & & \dot{g} & & h_1' & & e & & d & & t_1 u \\
 \parallel & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \parallel & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \parallel & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \parallel & \xleftarrow{\quad} & \parallel & \xleftarrow{\quad} & \parallel & \xleftarrow{\quad} \\
 & f & & \dot{g} & & h_2' & & e & & d & & t_1 u
 \end{array} \\
 = \\
 \begin{array}{ccccccc}
 & f & & \dot{g} & & h_2' & & e & & d & & t_1 u \\
 \parallel & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \parallel & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \parallel & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \parallel & \xleftarrow{\quad} & \parallel & \xleftarrow{\quad} & \parallel & \xleftarrow{\quad} \\
 & f & & \dot{g} & & h_2' & & e & & d & & t_1 u
 \end{array}
 \end{array}$$

This 2-morphism is an Ω 2-morphism. Indeed it corresponds to a Σ -step of type s between Σ -schemes of level 3, as illustrated by the Σ -step s of the bottom of the next diagram. Moreover,

level 2, we see that $\Omega \circ 1_{\bar{f}}$ corresponds to the Σ -path $S_1 \xrightarrow{d_1} \xrightarrow{u} \xrightarrow{s} \xrightarrow{u} \xrightarrow{d_1} S_2$ formed by the bottom part of the diagram



where R_1 and R_2 are obvious Σ -schemes.

The equivalences of Σ -paths indicated in this diagram are clear, from Lemma 3.12 and Proposition A.3. Therefore, we conclude that $\Omega \circ f$ is given by a Σ -path of the form indicated in the table.

(2) Let Ω be the Ω 2-cell corresponding to the Σ -step

Thus, here $(l_i, m_i) = (h_i g^l, s_i)$. Let it be represented by the 2-morphism

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
\begin{array}{c} \parallel \\ f \\ \parallel \end{array} & \xrightarrow{f} & \xrightarrow{g'} & \begin{array}{c} \parallel \\ \\ \parallel \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{h_1} \\ \swarrow \theta \\ \xrightarrow{h_2} \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} \xleftarrow{s_1} \\ \downarrow d_1 \\ \xleftarrow{s_2} \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} \xleftarrow{t} \\ \downarrow \Sigma \\ \xleftarrow{t} \end{array} \\
= & & & & & & \\
\begin{array}{c} \parallel \\ f \\ \parallel \end{array} & \xrightarrow{f} & \xrightarrow{g'} & \begin{array}{c} \parallel \\ \\ \parallel \end{array} & & & \begin{array}{c} \parallel \\ \Sigma \\ \parallel \end{array} \\
& & & & & & \begin{array}{c} \parallel \\ t \\ \parallel \end{array}
\end{array}$$

with θ invertible. Now, in order to compose with $\bar{k} = (k, u)$, just consider the Σ -squares

$$\begin{array}{ccc} & \xrightarrow{t} & \\ k \downarrow & \Sigma & \downarrow k_0 \\ & \xrightarrow{t'} & \end{array} \quad \text{and} \quad \begin{array}{ccc} & \xrightarrow{d} & \\ k_0 \downarrow & \Sigma & \downarrow k' \\ & \xrightarrow{d'} & \end{array}$$

and their horizontal composition. Following Definition 3.24, we obtain the middle 2-morphism of the desired composition $\bar{k} \circ \Omega$:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccccccc} \xrightarrow{f} & \xrightarrow{g^i} & \xrightarrow{h_1} & \xrightarrow{d_1} & \xrightarrow{k^i} & \xleftarrow{d^i t^i} & \xleftarrow{u} & & & & \\ \parallel & = & \parallel & \downarrow \theta & \parallel & = & \parallel \sum & \parallel \sum & \parallel & & \\ \xrightarrow{f} & \xrightarrow{g^i} & \xrightarrow{h_2} & \xrightarrow{d_2} & \xleftarrow{k^i} & \xleftarrow{d^i t^i} & \xleftarrow{u} & & & & \end{array}$$

This 2-morphism is an Ω 2-morphism. Indeed, it corresponds to the following Σ -step of type \mathbf{s}

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{r} \\ \downarrow s \quad \downarrow g' \\ \Sigma \\ \downarrow r' \\ \downarrow h_1 \quad \downarrow h_1 \\ \Sigma \\ \downarrow s_1 \\ \downarrow t \quad \downarrow d_1 \\ \Sigma \\ \downarrow k \quad \downarrow k_0 \quad \downarrow k' \\ \downarrow t' \quad \downarrow d' \end{array} & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{s}} & \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{r} \\ \downarrow s \quad \downarrow g' \\ \Sigma \\ \downarrow r' \\ \downarrow h_2 \quad \downarrow h_2 \\ \Sigma \\ \downarrow s_1 \\ \downarrow t \quad \downarrow d_2 \\ \Sigma \\ \downarrow k \quad \downarrow k_0 \quad \downarrow k' \\ \downarrow t' \quad \downarrow d' \end{array} .
 \end{array}$$

Observe that, in this case, the Ω 2-cells Ω_i , $i = 1, 2$, as in Definition 3.24, just reduce to the basic Ω 2-cell determined by the Σ -path of level 1

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{s_i t} \\ \downarrow k \quad \downarrow \end{array} & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \begin{array}{ccc} \xrightarrow{t} & \xrightarrow{s_i} & \\ \downarrow \Sigma & \downarrow \Sigma & \downarrow d_i \\ \downarrow k & \downarrow k_0 & \downarrow k' \\ \downarrow t' & \downarrow d' & \end{array} ,
 \end{array}$$

equivalently, determined by the following Σ -step of level 3:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{r} \\ \downarrow s \quad \downarrow g' \\ \Sigma \\ \downarrow h_i \quad \downarrow h_i \\ \Sigma \\ \downarrow t \quad \downarrow s_i \\ \Sigma \\ \downarrow k \quad \downarrow \end{array} & \xrightarrow{\mathbf{d}} & \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{r} \\ \downarrow s \quad \downarrow g' \\ \Sigma \\ \downarrow h_i \quad \downarrow h_i \\ \Sigma \\ \downarrow t \quad \downarrow s_i \\ \Sigma \\ \downarrow k \quad \downarrow k_0 \quad \downarrow k' \\ \downarrow t' \quad \downarrow d' \end{array}
 \end{array}$$

In conclusion, we obtain the Σ -path as in the first row of the second table.

The case of the second row of the second table, where Ω corresponds to the Σ -step of type \mathbf{u} , works similarly.

Finally, it is clear that every of the four Σ -paths given in the above tables leading to $\Omega \circ 1_{\bar{f}}$ and $1_{\bar{k}} \circ \Omega$ are Σ -paths of interest. \square

Corollary A.6. (1) Let $\Omega: (h_1 g' f, s_1) \rightarrow (h_2 g' f, s_2)$ be the Ω 2-cell (with the indicated domain and codomain) corresponding to the Σ -step of left border $(r, g, s, 1)$

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{r} \\ \downarrow s \quad \downarrow g' \\ \Sigma \\ \downarrow r' \\ \downarrow h_1 \end{array} & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{r} \\ \downarrow s \quad \downarrow g' \\ \Sigma \\ \downarrow r' \\ \downarrow h_2 \end{array}
 \end{array}$$

and let $\bar{h} = (h, t)$ be horizontally composable with Ω . Then the Ω 2-cell $\bar{h} \circ \Omega$ corresponds to a Σ -path of interest with left border $(r, g, s, h, t, 1)$.

(2) Let $\Omega: (h_1, s_1 s') \rightarrow (h_2, s_2 s')$ be the Ω 2-cell (with the indicated domain and codomain) corresponding the Σ -step

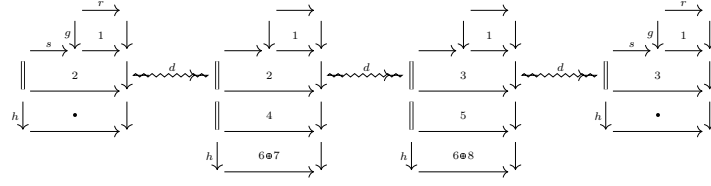
$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{r} \\ \downarrow s \quad \downarrow g' \\ \Sigma \\ \downarrow h_1 \end{array} & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{r} \\ \downarrow s \quad \downarrow g' \\ \Sigma \\ \downarrow h_2 \end{array}
 \end{array}$$

and let $\bar{h} = (h, t)$ be horizontally composable with Ω . Then, the 2-cell $\bar{h} \circ \Omega$ corresponds to a Σ -path of interest with left border $(r, g, s, h, t, 1)$.

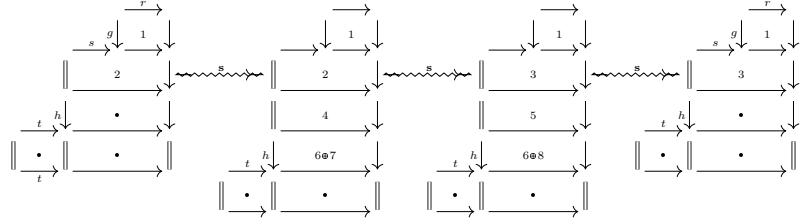
Proof. (1) From Proposition A.5, we know that the 2-cell $\bar{h} \circ \Omega$ is the one corresponding to the Σ -path

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{r} \\ \downarrow s \quad \downarrow g' \\ \Sigma \\ \downarrow h_1 \end{array} & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\quad} \\ \downarrow \quad \downarrow 1 \\ \Sigma \\ \downarrow \quad \downarrow 1 \end{array} & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{\quad} \\ \downarrow \quad \downarrow 1 \\ \Sigma \\ \downarrow \quad \downarrow 1 \end{array} & \xrightarrow{\quad} & \begin{array}{c} \xrightarrow{r} \\ \downarrow s \quad \downarrow g' \\ \Sigma \\ \downarrow h_2 \end{array} \\
 \parallel & & \parallel & & \parallel & & \parallel \\
 \begin{array}{c} \downarrow h \end{array} & & \begin{array}{c} \downarrow h \end{array} & & \begin{array}{c} \downarrow h \end{array} & & \begin{array}{c} \downarrow h \end{array}
 \end{array}$$

Observe that, equivalently, $\bar{h} \circ \Omega$ corresponds to the Σ path of Σ -schemes of level 2 given by

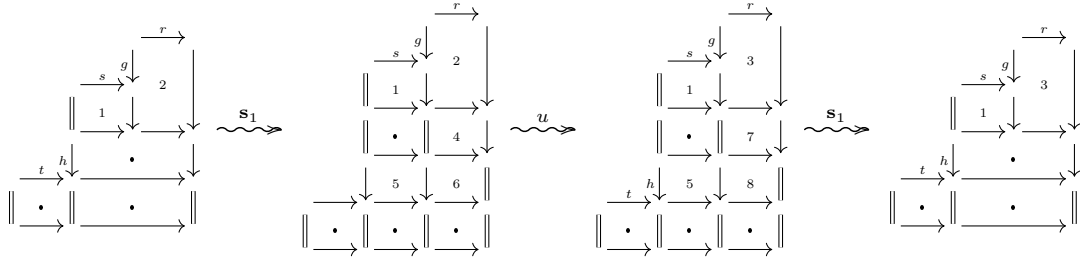


Moreover, adding just an identity row below each Σ -scheme, we obtain a Σ -path between Σ -schemes of level 3 and left border $(r, g, s, h, t, 1)$:



The 2-cell $\bar{h} \circ \Omega$ also corresponds to this Σ -path, which indeed is equivalent to just a Σ -step of type s . Hence, a Σ -path of interest.

(2) Acting in a similar way for the Σ -step u , we obtain that the Ω 2-cell $\bar{h} \circ \Omega$ corresponds to the following Σ -path



which is of interest. □

The last proposition of this section states that every two Σ -paths of interest, of any finite length, between two Σ -schemes of level 3, are equivalent. As an auxiliary tool we are going to consider certain Σ -paths into the canonical Σ -scheme.

For a Σ -scheme of a given configuration of interest x (see Definition 3.18) there may exist several Σ -paths from it into the canonical Σ -scheme. In the next table we choose one of that Σ -paths to be the x -*canonical Σ -path*.

x	x -canonical Σ -path
da	
db	
dc	
ua	
ub	
s	
s1	

Proposition A.7. *Every two Σ -paths of interest starting and ending at the same Σ -schemes are equivalent.*

Proof. A. First, we show that for every Σ -scheme of interest exhibiting two different kinds of configurations of interest, the corresponding two canonical Σ -paths are equivalent.

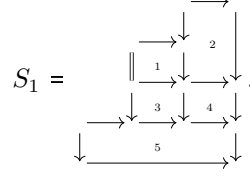
1) **da** and **db**. A Σ -scheme exhibiting the both configurations looks as follows:

$$S_1 = \begin{array}{c} \rightarrow \\ \downarrow 1 \\ \rightarrow \downarrow 2 \downarrow 3 \\ \downarrow 4 \end{array} \cdot$$

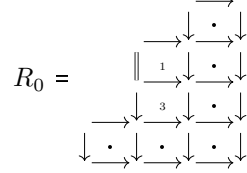
Taking the **da**-canonical Σ -path and the **db**-canonical Σ -path we see that we have the following diagram, where the top and bottom lines are the canonical Σ -paths and the equivalence \equiv is given by Proposition A.3. Hence, the two canonical Σ -paths are equivalent.

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} & & S_3 & & \\ & u \nearrow & & s \searrow & \\ S_1 & \xrightarrow{d} & S_2 & \equiv & \text{Can} \\ & s \searrow & & u \nearrow & \\ & & S_4 & & \end{array}$$

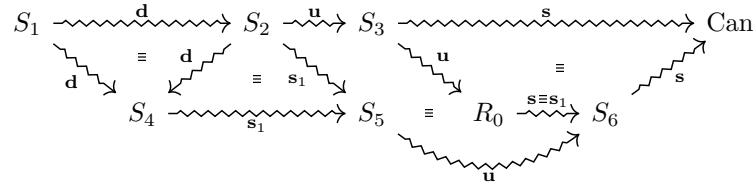
2) **da** and **dc**. A Σ -scheme exhibiting the both configurations looks as follows:



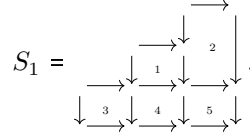
Let



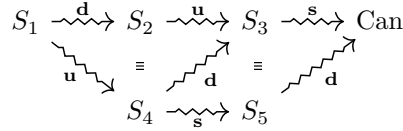
Putting the **da**-canonical Σ -path and the **dc**-canonical Σ -path on the top and on the bottom, respectively, we obtain the following equivalences of Σ -paths, showing that the two canonical Σ -paths are equivalent:



3) **da** and **ua**. A Σ -scheme exhibiting the both configurations looks as follows:

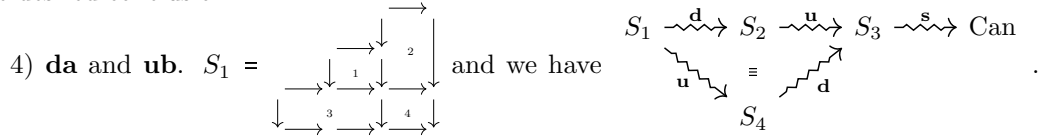


Let the **da**-canonical and **ua**-canonical Σ -paths be, respectively, the top line and the bottom line of the following diagram. There is a Σ -step of type **d** from S_4 to S_3 .

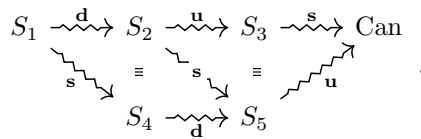
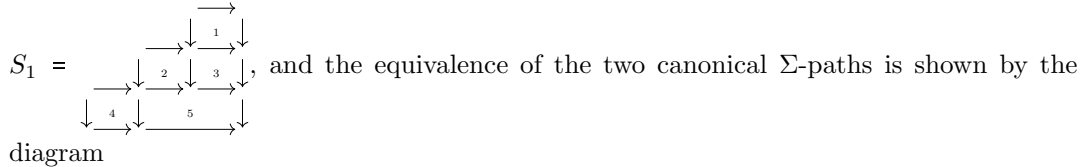


Hence, by Proposition A.3, the two canonical Σ paths are equivalent.

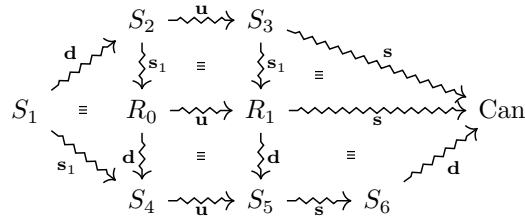
The remaining cases are shown in an analogous way. Next we just exhibit the scheme of the diagram with the two corresponding canonical Σ -paths and the equivalences leading to the desired conclusion.



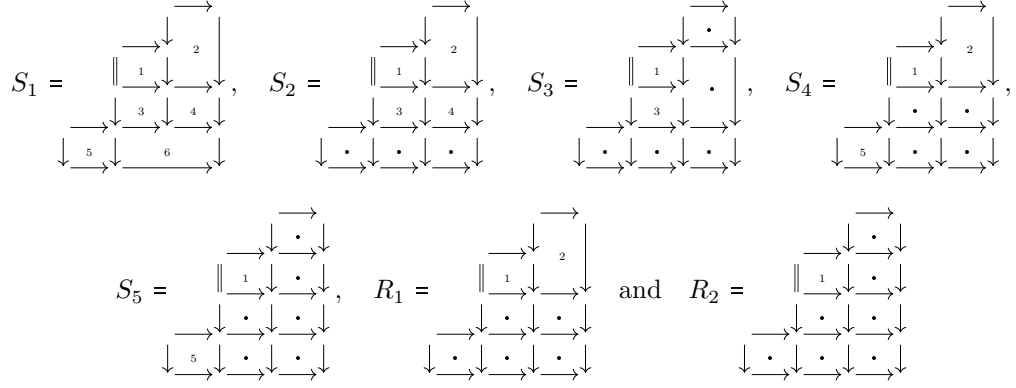
5) **da** and **s**. The combination of the two configurations give a Σ -scheme of the form



6) **da** and **s₁**. The equivalence is shown by the following diagram



where



7) **db** and **dc**. Put $S_1 =$

 We can construct a diagram of the form

showing that the two canonical Σ -paths are equivalent.

8) **db** and **ua**. Put $S_1 =$

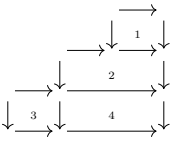
 and use the diagram

where R_1 is obvious.

9) **db** and **ub**. Put $S_1 =$

 and use the diagram

to conclude that the two canonical Σ -steps are equivalent.

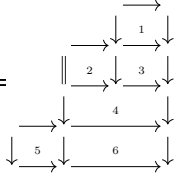
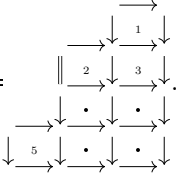
10) **db** and **s**. Put $S_1 =$  and use the following diagram

$$S_1 \xrightarrow{\text{d}} S_2 \xrightarrow{\text{s}} S_3 \xrightarrow{\text{u}} \text{Can}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{d} \\ \text{s} \end{array} \equiv \begin{array}{c} \text{s} \\ \text{d} \end{array}$$

$$S_4$$

to conclude the equivalence of the two canonical Σ -paths.

11) **db** and **s₁**. Put $S_1 =$  and consider $R_1 =$ . Use the following

diagram

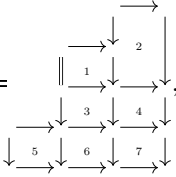
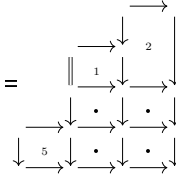
$$S_1 \xrightarrow{\text{d}} S_2 \xrightarrow{\text{s}_1} S_3 \xrightarrow{\text{u}} \text{Can}$$

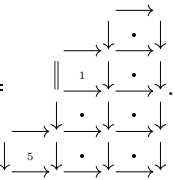
$$\begin{array}{c} \text{d} \\ \text{s}_1 \end{array} \equiv \begin{array}{c} \text{s}_1 \\ \text{d} \end{array}$$

$$R_1 \xrightarrow{\text{s}} S_4 \xrightarrow{\text{u}} S_5 \xrightarrow{\text{s}} S_6$$

$$(*)$$

where the equivalence in $(*)$ is obtained as for the case **db** and **ua**, to conclude the equivalence of the two canonical Σ -paths.

12) **dc** and **ua**. Put $S_1 =$ , and consider $R_1 =$  and

$R_2 =$ . Use the following diagram

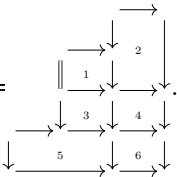
$$S_1 \xrightarrow{\text{d}} S_2 \xrightarrow{\text{s}_1} S_3 \xrightarrow{\text{u}} S_4 \xrightarrow{\text{s}} \text{Can}$$

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{d} \\ \text{s}_1 \end{array} \equiv \begin{array}{c} \text{s}_1 \\ \text{d} \end{array}$$

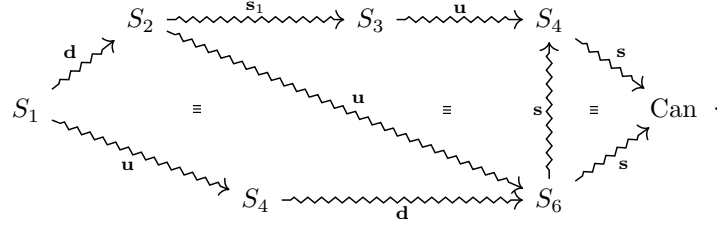
$$R_1 \xrightarrow{\text{u}} R_2 \xrightarrow{\text{s}} S_6$$

$$S_4 \xrightarrow{\text{u}} S_5 \xrightarrow{\text{s}} S_6$$

to conclude the equivalence of the two canonical Σ -paths.

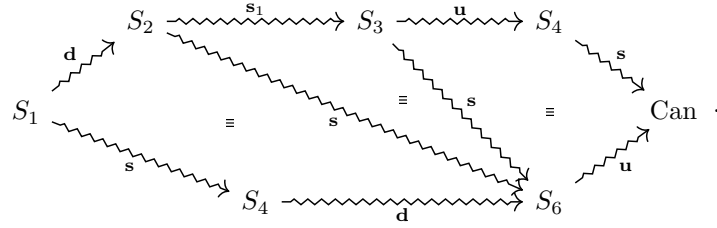
13) **dc** and **ub**. Put $S_1 =$ . We obtain a diagram with the two canonical

Σ -paths which are equivalent as illustrated by the diagram



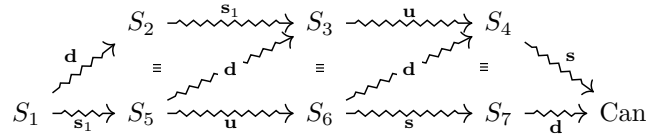
14) **dc** and **s**. Put $S_1 = \begin{array}{c} \longrightarrow \\ \downarrow 1 \\ \longrightarrow 2 \downarrow 3 \\ \downarrow 4 \\ \longrightarrow 5 \downarrow 6 \\ \downarrow \end{array}$. We obtain a diagram with the two canonical

Σ -paths showing that they are equivalent:



15) **dc** and **s1**. Put $S_1 = \begin{array}{c} \longrightarrow \\ \downarrow 2 \\ \longrightarrow 1 \downarrow 3 \\ \downarrow 4 \\ \longrightarrow 5 \downarrow \end{array}$. We obtain a diagram with the two canonical

Σ -paths showing that they are equivalent:



The remaining six cases are proved with similar easy arguments.

B. Observe that given a Σ -step of interest of a certain type k , say

$$S_1 \rightsquigarrow^k S_2 ,$$

then S_1 and S_2 have a common configuration y where the string y starts with the character k . Moreover, the y -canonical Σ -path from S_1 to Can factors through $S_1 \rightsquigarrow^k S_2$; more precisely, we have

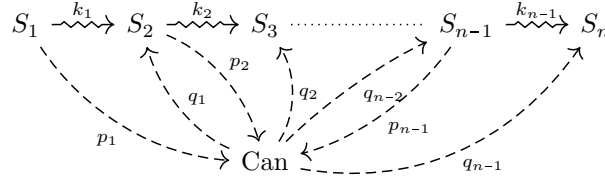
$$\begin{array}{c} S_1 \rightsquigarrow^k R \rightsquigarrow \dots \rightsquigarrow \text{Can} \\ \left. \begin{array}{c} \downarrow k \\ \downarrow k \\ \downarrow k \end{array} \right\} S_2 \end{array} \quad (\text{A.12})$$

where the top Σ -path is the y -canonical Σ -path from S_1 to Can and the bottom line is the y -canonical Σ -path from S_2 to Can.

Now suppose we have a Σ -path of interest

$$S_1 \rightsquigarrow^{k_1} S_2 \rightsquigarrow^{k_2} \dots \rightsquigarrow^{k_{n-1}} S_n .$$

In the following diagram, let p_i be the y_i -canonical Σ -path from S_i to Can, and let q_i be the reverse of the y_i -canonical Σ -path from S_{i+1} to Can.



For every $i = 1, \dots, n-2$, the Ω 2-cell corresponding to $\text{Can} \xrightarrow{q_i} S_i \xrightarrow{p_{i+1}} \text{Can}$ is the identity, since p_{i+1} is a canonical Σ -path, q_i is the reverse of a canonical Σ -path, and canonical Σ -paths departing from the same Σ -scheme are equivalent. Consequently, we conclude that the given Σ -path is indeed equivalent to

$$S_1 \xrightarrow{p_1} \text{Can} \xrightarrow{q_{n-1}} S_n . \quad (\text{A.13})$$

Since all canonical Σ -paths from a given Σ -scheme to Can are equivalent, we conclude that all Σ -paths of interest from S_1 to S_n are equivalent to (A.13). \square

References

- [1] J. Bourke and R. Garner. Algebraic weak factorisation systems ii: categories of weak maps. *J. Pure Appl. Algebra*, 220(1):148–174, 2016.
- [2] P. Gabriel and M. Zisman. *Calculus of Fractions and Homotopy Theory*, volume 35 of *Ergebnisse der Mathematik und ihrer Grenzgebiete. 2. Folge*. Springer, Berlin, Heidelberg, 1967.
- [3] F. Lucatelli Nunes and L. Sousa. On lax epimorphisms and the associated factorization. *J. Pure Appl. Algebra*, 226(12):107–126, 2022.
- [4] G. Manuell and L. Sousa. Lax monoidal functors, and other special functors, as bicategories of lax fractions. *in preparation*.
- [5] D. Pronk and L. Scull. Bicategories of fractions revisited: towards small homs and canonical 2-cells. *Theory Appl. Categ.*, 38(24):913–1014, 2022.
- [6] D. A. Pronk. Etendues and stacks as bicategories of fractions. *Compos. Math.*, 102(3):243–303, 1996.
- [7] L. Sousa. A calculus of lax fractions. *J. Pure Appl. Algebra*, 221(2):422–448, 2017.

Graham MANUELL
 Stellenbosch University
 Stellenbosch, South Africa
 graham@manuell.me

Lurdes SOUSA
 Polythecnic of Viseu, Portugal
 CMUC, University of Coimbra, Portugal
 sousa@estv.ipv.pt